DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 290 645	SO 018 269
AUTHOR	Bezuidenhout, J. J.
TITLE	Comparative Education Statistics: Part 1. Population Statistics for Educational Planning and the Provision of Education. Report 0-290.
INSTITUTION	Human Sciences Research Council, Pretoria (South Africa).
REPORT NO	ISBN-0-7969-0382-4
PUB DATE	86
NOTE	276p.; Translated by Isabel Claassen.
AVAILABLE FROM	Technical Services, Private Bag X41, Pretoria 0001, Republic of South Africa.
PUB TYPE	Statistical Data (110) -- Reports - Research/Technical (143)
EDRS PRICE	MF01/PC12 Plus Postage.
DESCRIPTORS	Comparative Analysis; Comparative Education; Data Analysis; Data Interpretation; *Demography; Educational Planning; Foreign Countries; *Migration Patterns; *Population Distribution; *Population Growth; *Population Trends; Trend Analysis
IDENTIFIERS	*South Africa

ABSTRACT

The purpose of this research project was to compile and analyze data concerning the composition and geographic distribution of South Africa's population for the purpose of future educational planning to meet the needs of four population groups. This document contains statistics and conclusions on: (1) the role of population shifts and urbanization; (2) economic development effects on internal migration; (3) age distribution and population growth; and (4) population projections. The findings indicate that the total population change between 1904 and 1980 included a six percent decrease in Whites, a five percent increase in Blacks, and a one-half percent increase in both Coloreds and Asians. Statistics for 1970 and 1980 indicate an easterly and northeasterly population migration. The four population group's age distribution patterns suggest that: (1) White's constitute the oldest group; (2) Asians, in 1960, comprised the youngest segment; but (3) by 1980, Blacks had become the youngest population group. Tables, maps, an index, and a bibliography are included. (JHP)

****
* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made *
* from the original document. *
****

ED290645

Report O-290

1986

Comparative education statistics

Part 1

Population statistics required for educational planning and the provision of education

J.J. Bezuidenhout

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED BY
J. G.
Garbers
TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)."

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
Office of Educational Research and Improvement
EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)
☑ This document has been reproduced as received from the person or organization originating it.
☐ Minor changes have been made to improve reproduction quality.
• Points of view or opinions stated in this document do not necessarily represent official OERI position or policy.

SO018269

RGN·HSRC

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Comparative education statistics

Part 1

Population statistics required for educational planning and the provision of education

Report O-290

Comparative education statistics

Part 1

Population statistics for educational planning and the provision of education

J.J. Bezuidenhout

Translated by: Isabel Claassen

Pretoria
Human Sciences Research Council
1986

J.J. Bezuidenhout, B.Sc., T.E.D., M.Sc.

Translated from Afrikaans: "Vergelykende onderwysstatistieke
Deel 1: Bevolkingstatistieke benodig vir onderwysbeplanning
en onderwysvoorsiening" RGN 1985

Institute for Educational Research
Executive Director: Dr S.W.H. Engelbrecht

ISBN 0 7969 0382 4

© Human Sciences Research Council, 1986
Printed and published by the HSRC

PREFACE

From the HSRC Investigation into Education that was conducted in 1980 it became quite clear that the availability of comparative education statistics was absolutely essential for research. This led to the HSRC launching a new research project on comparative education statistics in the latter half of 1981. The late Mr C. van Niekerk, a senior research officer of the HSRC, was initially responsible for this particular investigation. After his death in November 1982 the research was continued by Mr J.J. Bezuidenhout.

Owing to the heterogeneous Southern African population, incomparable elements and backlogs in the educational field, and particularly the continued need for the latest population and education statistics, it was decided to convert this project into a continued long-term research project and to publish its findings in the form of separate reports in a series of reports.

Part 1 contains important information on the composition and geographic distribution of the total population of Southern Africa (independent and self-governing states included); the role of population shifts and urbanization; the effect of economic development on internal migration; the importance of statistics relating to the age distribution of the respective population groups and the way in which these statistics are affected by population growth; the population projections that are available, and how these compare with the 1980 census figures. For the sake of the context it should be mentioned that that this first part in series of reports had been completed shortly before the implementation of the new constitutional dispensation for the RSA during September 1984.

It is hoped that Part 1 will contribute to a better understanding of the population statistics for the entire Southern Africa and that it will serve as a useful aid in meaningful planning for the provision of education for the respective population groups of Southern Africa in the future.

S.W.H. ENGELBRECHT
EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR

CONTENTS PAGE

SAMEVATTING/ABSTRACT xiii

CHAPTER

1 THE COMPOSITION AND GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF THE TOTAL POPULATION OF SOUTHERN AFRICA 1

1.1 INTRODUCTION 1

1.1.1 The urgent need for available statistics for educational planning and the provision of education 1

1.1.2 Definition of the concept of Southern Africa 3

1.2 THE COMPOSITION OF THE TOTAL POPULATION OF SOUTHERN AFRICA AS REVEALED BY CENSUSES OVER THE YEARS 6

1.2.1 Comment on Tables 1.1 and 1.2 9

1.3 THE GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF THE TOTAL POPULATION OF SOUTHERN AFRICA 10

1.3.1 Composition of the Southern African population according to ethnic groups 10

1.3.2 Variability of geographic distribution of population groups from 1936 to 1980 13

1.3.3 Geographic distribution of population groups in 1970 and 1980 16

1.3.4 Geographic distribution of the Black population in 1970 and 1980 29

1.3.5 Factors responsible for the geographic redistribution of population groups and the way in which their future development may be affected by these factors 35

CHAPTER PAGE

2 POPULATION SHIFTS AND THE EFFECT OF ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT ON INTERNAL MIGRATION 43

2.1 POPULATION SHIFTS 43

2.1.1 Immigration and emigration 43

2.2 THE EFFECT OF ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT ON INTERNAL MIGRATION 44

2.1.2 Internal migration 58

2.2.1 Significance of economic development

2.2.2 Latest regional development strategy for Southern Africa 58

2.2.3 Demarcation of broad development regions 60

2.2.4 Criteria for classification of regions according to development priorities 62

2.2.5 Order of importance of development regions 63

2.2.6 Comment on the proposed regional development plan 63

2.2.7 The Vaal Triangle as a strategic industrial centre 65

3 OVERALL POPULATION GROWTH AND NATURAL POPULATION GROWTH ACCORDING TO AGE 67

3.1 AGE DISTRIBUTION AND OVERALL POPULATION GROWTH 67

3.1.1 The importance of age distribution of the population with a view to planning 67

3.1.2 Age distribution of the total population of Southern Africa for 1960, 1970 and 1980 68

3.1.3 Absolute growth of the total population of Southern Africa and in the White area per population group 75

CHAPTER PAGE

3.1.4 Increase in population figures for children under the age of one in Southern Africa and in the White area per population group 78

3.1.5 Increases and decreases of the total population and of children under the age of one per population group for the periods 1960 to 1970, 1970 to 1980 and 1960 to 1980 84

3.1.6 Age intervals of the potential school population within the total population and of the respective population groups for the periods 1960 to 1970, 1970 to 1980 and 1960 to 1980 88

3.1.7 The economically active labour market of the population 95

3.2 NATURAL POPULATION GROWTH 99

3.2.1 Official vital statistics for 1960, 1970 and 1980 99

3.2.2 Birth and death rates 102

3.2.3 Natural growth rate 103

3.2.4 Fertility and mortality as determinants of population growth 113

3.2.5 Other factors that determine population growth 114

3.2.6 Additional factual information concerning population growth 114

4 AGE DISTRIBUTION ACCORDING TO SEX AND VARIOUS POPULATION GROUPS 119

4.1 AGE DISTRIBUTION ACCORDING TO SEX 119

4.1.1 Comment on Table 4.1 127

4.2 CUMULATIVE PERCENTAGE AGE DISTRIBUTION OF VARIOUS POPULATION GROUPS IN 1960, 1970 AND 1980 132

5 POPULATION PROJECTIONS 137

CHAPTER PAGE

5.1 INFORMATION NEEDED FOR FORMULATING PROJECTIONS 137

5.2 VARIABLE FACTORS THAT HAMPER THE CALCULATION OF PROJECTIONS 138

5.3 COMMENT ON THE TOTALS OF A FEW POPULATION PROJECTIONS FOR THE VARIOUS POPULATION GROUPS 142

5.4 A FEW REASONS WHY PROJECTIONS SHOW DEVIATIONS 145

5.5 EFFECT OF DECLINING BIRTHRATES ON POPULATION 148

5.6 POPULATION PROJECTIONS ACCORDING TO AGE DISTRIBUTION AND SEX PER POPULATION GROUP FOR 1980 149

6 SUMMARY OF FINDINGS 186

TABLES

1.1 CENSUS SURVEYS OF THE TOTAL POPULATION OF SOUTHERN AFRICA: 1904-1980 7

1.2 POPULATION FIGURES EXPRESSED AS PERCENTAGES OF THE TOTAL POPULATION: 1904-1980 8

1.3 COMPOSITION OF THE SOUTHERN AFRICAN POPULATION IN 1970 AND 1980 12

1.4 GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF POPULATION GROUPS: 1936-1980: ACCORDING TO NUMBERS IN THOUSANDS 14

1.5 GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF POPULATION GROUPS: 1936-1980: ACCORDING TO PERCENTAGES 15

1.6 GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF THE FOUR POPULATION GROUPS OF SOUTHERN AFRICA IN RESPECT OF 1970 AND 1980 17

1.7 GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF THE FOUR POPULATION GROUPS OF SOUTHERN AFRICA IN RESPECT OF PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION FOR 1970 AND 1980 19

TABLES PAGE

1.8 GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF THE FOUR POPULATION GROUPS OF SOUTHERN AFRICA IN RESPECT OF THE NUMBER AND PERCENTAGE INCREASES AND DECREASES FOR 1970 AND 1980 20

1.9 GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF BLACK POPULATION OF SOUTHERN AFRICA ACCORDING TO POPULATION GROUPS: 1970 AND 1980 22

1.10 BLACK DEVELOPMENT IN SOUTHERN AFRICA: CONSTITUTIONAL 31

1.11 BLACK DEVELOPMENT IN SOUTHERN AFRICA: CONSTITUTIONAL, INCLUDING EDUCATION 32

2.1 NUMBER OF MAGISTERIAL DISTRICTS WITH ABSOLUTE INCREASES AND DECREASES IN THE POPULATION BETWEEN 1970 AND 1980 PER POPULATION GROUP 51

2.2 TOTAL POPULATION GROWTH IN PERCENTAGES IN THE SELF-GOVERNING NATIONAL STATES: 1970-1980 53

3.1 AGE DISTRIBUTION OF TOTAL POPULATION IN SOUTHERN AFRICA FOR 1960, 1970 AND 1980 69

3.2 AGE DISTRIBUTION OF TOTAL POPULATION IN THE WHITE AREA FOR 1960, 1970 AND 1980 71

3.3 AGE DISTRIBUTION OF TOTAL BLACK POPULATION IN SOUTHERN AFRICA FOR 1960, 1970 AND 1980 73

3.4 COMPARISON BETWEEN NUMBERS AND RELATIVE PERCENTAGES OF POPULATION GROWTH AND OF CHILDREN YOUNGER THAN ONE YEAR FOR TOTAL POPULATION AND 4 RESPECTIVE POPULATION GROUPS OF SOUTHERN AFRICA FOR 1960, 1970 AND 1980 81

3.5 CHILDREN LESS THAN 1 YEAR OLD OF TOTAL POPULATION AND OF RESPECTIVE POPULATION GROUPS IN NUMBERS, AND AS PERCENTAGES OF TOTAL POPULATION AND OF POPULATION GROUPS FOR 1960, 1970 AND 1980 86

3.6 LIFE STATISTICS 100

3.7 PERCENTAGE DIFFERENCES WITH REGARD TO BIRTH FIGURES PER 1 000 OF POPULATION FOR 1960-1970, 1970-1980 AND 1960-1980 101

TABLES PAGE

3.8 PERCENTAGE DIFFERENCES WITH REGARD TO NATURAL GROWTH RATE PERCENTAGE OF POPULATION FOR 1960-1970, 1970-1980 AND 1960-1980 104

3.9 COMPARISON BETWEEN BIRTH RATE PER 1 000 AND NUMBER OF CHILDREN YOUNGER THAN 1 YEAR PER 1 000 OF RESPECTIVE POPULATION GROUPS FOR 1960, 1970 AND 1980
PLUS APPENDIX 109

3.10 HOW OFFICIAL NATURAL GROWTH RATE PER 100 COMPARES WITH NATURAL GROWTH RATE PER 100 CALCULATED FOR NUMBER OF CHILDREN YOUNGER THAN ONE YEAR PER POPULATION GROUP FOR 1960, 1970 AND 1980 111

4.1 PERCENTAGE DISTRIBUTION OF POPULATION GROUPS ACCORDING TO SEX AND AGE INTERVALS FOR 1970 AND 1980 120

5.1 COMPARISON BETWEEN POPULATION PROJECTIONS AND ESTIMATES WITH 1970 CENSUS AS POINT OF DEPARTURE FOR RESPECTIVE POPULATION GROUPS FOR 1980 143

5.2 CONVERSION OF POPULATION PROJECTIONS FOR 1980 WITH 1980 POPULATION CENSUS FIGURES ON THE BASIS OF 100 146

5.3 COMPARISON BETWEEN PERCENTAGE COMPOSITIONS OF POTENTIAL SCHOOL POPULATION (0-19 YEARS) AND THE REST OF THE TOTAL POPULATION (20 YEARS AND OLDER) FOR 1960, 1970 AND 1980 150

5.4 POPULATION PROJECTIONS ACCORDING TO AGE DISTRIBUTION: WHITES 151

5.5 POPULATION PROJECTIONS ACCORDING TO AGE DISTRIBUTION: COLOUREDS 160

5.6 POPULATION PROJECTIONS ACCORDING TO AGE DISTRIBUTION: ASIANS 166

5.7 POPULATION PROJECTIONS ACCORDING TO AGE DISTRIBUTION: BLACKS 172

5.8 CONVERSION OF POPULATION PROJECTIONS FOR 1980 ACCORDING TO AGE INTERVALS BASED ON THE 1980 POPULATION CENSUS FIGURES: WHITES, COLOUREDS, ASIANS AND BLACKS 178

TABLE PAGE

5.9 ANALYSIS AND COMPARISON OF RESPECTIVE PROJECTIONS REGARDING TOO HIGH OR TOO LOW WITH RESPECT TO 1980 CENSUS FIGURES TAKEN AS 100 182

DIAGRAMS

3.1 GROWTH IN NUMBERS OF TOTAL POPULATION AND INDIVIDUAL POPULATION GROUPS IN 1960, 1970 AND 1980 IN SOUTHERN AFRICA AND THE RSA 76

3.2 POPULATION: NUMBERS OF CHILDREN YOUNGER THAN 1 YEAR IN 1960, 1970 AND 1980 PER POPULATION GROUP FOR SOUTHERN AFRICA AND THE RSA 79

3.3 TOTAL POPULATION: AGE INTERVALS OF POTENTIAL SCHOOL POPULATION IN 1960, 1970 AND 1980 89

3.4 WHITE POPULATION (WHITE AREA): AGE INTERVALS OF POTENTIAL SCHOOL POPULATION IN 1960, 1970 AND 1980 90

3.5 COLOURED POPULATION (WHITE AREA): AGE INTERVALS OF POTENTIAL SCHOOL POPULATION IN 1960, 1970 AND 1980 92

3.6 ASIAN POPULATION: AGE INTERVALS OF POTENTIAL SCHOOL POPULATION IN 1960, 1970 AND 1980 93

3.7 TOTAL BLACK POPULATION (WHITE AREA, INDEPENDENT AND SELF-GOVERNING STATES): AGE INTERVALS OF POTENTIAL SCHOOL POPULATION IN 1960, 1970 AND 1980 94

3.8 TOTAL POPULATION AND INDIVIDUAL POPULATION GROUPS:

A ECONOMICALLY ACTIVE SECTION OF POPULATION IN RELATIVE PERCENTAGES FOR 1960, 1970 AND 1980 97

B ECONOMICALLY ACTIVE SECTION OF POPULATION IN MULTIPLES OF HUNDREDS OF THOUSANDS FOR 1960, 1970 AND 1980 97

4.1 CUMULATIVE PERCENTAGE OF AGE DISTRIBUTION OF VARIOUS POPULATION GROUPS IN 1960 133

DIAGRAMS PAGE

4.2 CUMULATIVE PERCENTAGE OF AGE DISTRIBUTION OF VARIOUS POPULATION GROUPS IN 1970 134

4.3 CUMULATIVE PERCENTAGE OF AGE DISTRIBUTION OF VARIOUS POPULATION GROUPS IN 1980 135

MAP

2.1 DEVELOPMENT REGIONS OF SOUTHERN AFRICA 61

LIST OF SOURCES 192

INDEX 220

SAMEVATTING

Die gebrek aan geordende onderwysstatistiek het gelei tot 'n nuwe navorsingsprojek Vergelykende onderwysstatistieke in 1981. Die bevolkingstatistieke van die TBVC-lande word normaalweg nie by die RSA se amptelike publikasies oor bevolkingstatistiek ingesluit nie. As gevolg hiervan verskil 1980 se bevolkingstatistiek vir Swartes in die RSA wesenlik van vorige sensusjare se syfers en is dus nie meer direk vergelykbaar met die syfers vir 1970, 1960 en vorige sensusjare nie. Ten einde sinvolle vergelykings tussen die verskillende sensusjare se bevolkingsyfers van die RSA te tref, word die TBVC-lande se bevolkingsyfers ook in berekening gebring, vandaar die gebruik van die term "Suider-Afrika". Die persentasiesamestelling van die totale bevolking van Suider-Afrika in 1904 en 1980 toon dat die persentasie Blankes met 6 % gedaal het, die persentasie Swartes met 5 % gestyg het en die persentasies vir Kleurlinge en Asiërs elk met 0,5 % toegeneem het. Die bevolkingstatistieke vir 1970 en 1980 toon dat die bevolkingsgroepe besig is om in 'n noordelike en noordoostelike rigting te verskuif. Volgens die drie afgelope sensusjare se bevolkingstatistieke is die patroon van die ouderdomsverspreiding van die vier bevolkingsgroepe besig om radikaal te verander. Die jongste beskikbare bevolkingsprojeksies vir 1980 is óf te hoog óf te laag in vergelyking met die voorlopige 1980-sensussyfers vir elkeen van die onderskeie bevolkingsgroepe van die RSA.

ABSTRACT

The lack of systematically ordered education statistics gave rise to a new research project Comparative Education Statistics that was launched in 1981. The population statistics of the TBVC countries are normally not included in the RSA's official publications on population statistics. For this reason the 1980 population statistics for Blacks in the RSA differ substantially from the figures obtained in previous census years and consequently cannot be compared directly with the figures for 1970, 1960 and previous census years. In order to draw meaningful comparisons between the population figures of the RSA for different census years the population statistics of the TBVC countries are also taken into account, hence the use of the term "Southern Africa". The percentage composition of the total population of Southern Africa in 1904 and in 1980 shows that the percentage of Whites has decreased by 6 %, that of Blacks has increased by 5 % and the corresponding figures for Coloureds and Asians have each increased by 0,5 %. A study of the population statistics for 1970 and 1980 indicates that these population groups are moving in an easterly and northeasterly direction. According to the past three years' population statistics a marked change is also taking place in the age distribution pattern of the four population groups. The latest available population projections for 1980 are either too high or too low when compared with the provisional 1980 census figures for each of the different population groups in th RSA.

CHAPTER 1

THE COMPOSITION AND GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF THE TOTAL POPULATION OF SOUTHERN AFRICA*

1.1 INTRODUCTION

1.1.1 The urgent need for available statistics for educational planning and the provision of education

In contrast with several earlier ad hoc investigations, the HSRC Investigation into Education of 1980 represented the first comprehensive investigation into the provision of education for all the inhabitants of the Republic of South Africa. This investigation revealed that comparing the provision of education for the respective population groups of the country had become very difficult owing to shortcomings and incomparable elements in the available statistics on population, education and the financing of education. For the purpose of this investigation intensive instant research on statistics regarding the country's four population groups had to be conducted in the past to serve as the basis for specific analyses in the investigation. However the need for complete, recent and accessible data in connection with such statistics remained and gave direct rise to the introduction of a new research project on comparative education statistics.

---

* Southern Africa in 1980 comprised the Republic of South Africa, the self-governing national states (Ciskei, KaNgwane, KwaNdebele, KwaZulu, Lebowa, Qwaqwa) and the independent states (Transkei, Bophuthatswana, Venda - later, together with Ciskei, the so-called TBVC countries). See also Paragraph 1.2. Ciskei became independent in 1981, in other words shortly after the census of 1980.

The aim of this project is to gather, analyse and process accountable population and education statistics in order to contribute to effective educational planning. The provision of essential and available population and education statistics is an attempt to provide a complete picture of the situation with regard to the provision of education for all the country's respective population groups as it was in the recent past and the way in which it has developed, changed and/or improved since then. A variety of available and authoritative sources was consulted in the course of the investigation.

One of the most significant results of the HSRC Education Report was the clear picture that it revealed of the extent of the disparity with regard to the provision of education for the different population groups in the RSA. In its reaction to the HSRC Education Report the Government first released an Interim Memorandum on the Report of the Human Sciences Research Council on the Inquiry into the Provision of Education in the RSA and later on a White Paper on the Provision of Education in the Republic of South Africa, 1983 , both of which contained a detailed explanation of the Government's points of view in principle and its decisions. At the same time it was emphasized that all decisions made by the Government should be considered within the context of the constitutional dispensation according to the new Constitution of the Republic of South Africa. This report is an attempt to contribute to the optimal planning for and provision of education.

1.1.2 Definition of the concept of Southern Africa

In order to be able to study, discuss, evaluate, and where possible, compare the general education system in the Republic of South Africa, the self-governing states (KwaZulu, Qwaqwa, KaNgwane, KwaNdebele, Lebowa and Gazankulu) and the independent states (Transkei, Bophuthatswana, Venda and Ciskei), the following essential elements have to be available:

first of all complete and reliable population statistics and secondly as many education statistics as possible for all the respective population groups. Problems are often experienced owing to the fact that the required information is not always readily obtainable and therefore it is sometimes necessary to make certain assumptions to obtain a picture of the situation.

The demographic information used in this part of the report was obtained chiefly from the periodic censuses and midyear estimates prepared and published by the Central Statistical Services* of the Department of Constitutional Development and Planning. All available sources were consulted, but most of the time the author also had to make his own calculations based on the information obtained from these sources.

---

* This service was previously rendered by the Department of Statistics and before that by the Bureau of Statistics.

As a result of the granting of independence to Transkei in 1976, Bophuthatswana in 1977, Venda in 1979 and Ciskei in 1981, the data offered in the official publications of the Central Statistical Services no longer included the population statistics of Blacks in these republics. When studying and comparing publications that contain the results of the population census of 1980 and the results of earlier census years such as 1970 and 1960, researchers are confronted with the problem that the statistical information on Blacks obtained in the different surveys is not comparable any more. This can be ascribed to the fact that the statistics for the present independent states had, before their independence, been included in those editions of the relevant publications issued at the time, whereas they have been excluded from these same publications since the states became independent. On account of this there is a substantial difference between the information of 1980 and the results of earlier censuses. Examples of matters that are particularly affected are the following:

- An increase in the total population, especially the total Black population in Southern Africa;

- the relative composition and distribution of the total population with its respective population groups according to areas, sex, ethnicity and age, and

- Black education and other social services for Blacks.

It has become common practice in the RSA to process and publish - separately and even in separate publications - information on matters such as population figures, education statistics, constitutional and social developments concerning the Republic of South Africa, the independent states, and the self-governing national states. The different levels of constitutional development of the independent and self-governing national states in Southern Africa are in this way recognized to a great extent. However distinguishing between the levels does not change the fact that the Southern African states are dependent on one another. A reality that must constantly be borne in mind is the fact that Southern Africa consists of a single interdependent economy with a number of subeconomies (BENSO, 1981: ix).

The most meaningful information is obtained when the population and education statistics of the four independent states are included with those of the Republic of South Africa and the self-governing national states, since it is then possible to compare the results of the 1980 population census and those of earlier censuses (1970 and 1960) in respect of various factors.

For these reasons definite attempts were made to obtain the maximum available and essential population and education statistics in respect of the independent states concerned, and to include these statistics with those for the RSA and the self-governing national states. Meaningful comparisons can consequently be drawn between Blacks and different Black ethnic groups, and valid conclusions reached.

1.2 THE COMPOSITION OF THE TOTAL POPULATION OF SOUTHERN AFRICA AS REVEALED BY CENSUSES OVER THE YEARS*

Before the composition of the Southern African population can be discussed, the population figures for the four main population groups of Southern Africa (Whites, Coloureds, Asians and Blacks) should be reflected in table form and at different dates and the attention should once again be drawn to the fact that, for the purposes of this report, the term Southern Africa includes

- the Republic of South Africa,

- the self-governing states (KwaZulu, Qwaqwa, KaNgwane, KwaNdebele, Lebowa, Gazankulu and Ciskei), and

- the independent states (Transkei, Bophuthatswana and Venda).

The population figures for the areas mentioned above are reflected jointly (per population group) by the nine different censuses from 1904 to 1980 (see Table 1.1). In addition to this information Table 1.2 contains the numbers of the four respective population

---

* Because this division only refers to the different censuses between 1904 and 1980, Ciskei is still regarded as self-governing and not an independent state (Ciskei gained independence only in 1981).

TABLE 1.1

CENSUS SURVEYS OF THE TOTAL POPULATION OF SOUTHERN AFRICA: 1904 - 1980

Year	Whites	Coloureds	Asians	Blacks	Total
1904	1 117 234	444 991	122 311	3 490 291	5 174 827
1911	1 276 319	525 466	152 094	4 018 878	5 972 757
1921	1 521 343	545 181	163 594	4 697 285	6 927 403
1936	2 003 334	769 241	219 691	6 595 597	9 587 863
1946	2 372 044	928 062	285 260	7 830 559	11 415 925
1951	2 641 689	1 103 016	366 664	8 560 083	12 675 452
1960	3 080 157	1 509 053	477 047	10 927 922	15 994 181
1970	3 773 282	2 050 699	630 372	15 339 975	21 794 328
*1980	4 528 100	2 612 780	821 320	16 923 760	24 885 960
**1980	4 537 935	2 621 686	821 545	20 886 270	28 867 436

***Transkei	6 826	5 885	219	2 323 650	2 336 580
***Bophuthatswana	2 356	2 966		1 323 315	1 328 637
***Venda	653	55	6	315 545	316 259
TOTAL	9 835	8 906	225	3 962 510	3 981 476

NOTE: Particulars prior to 1960 census survey include foreign visitors.

* Figures for 1980 do not include the Whites, Coloureds, Asians and Blacks of the three independent states (Transkei, Bophuthatswana and Venda).

** Figures for 1980 include Whites, Coloureds, Asians and Blacks of the three independent states (Transkei, Bophuthatswana and Venda).

*** Population figures for 1980 of the three independent states (Transkei, Bophuthatswana and Venda).

Sources: .Department of Statistics (1971, p.A.8 - A.10).

.Department of Statistics (1980, p.1.14).
.Central Statistical Services (1982, p.1.9).
.BENSO (1982, Table 6).

TABLE 1.2

POPULATION FIGURES EXPRESSED AS PERCENTAGES OF THE TOTAL POPULATION: 1904-1980

Year	Whites	Coloureds	Asians	Blacks	Total
1904	21,59	8,60	2,36	67,45	100,00
1911	21,37	8,80	2,55	67,28	100,00
1921	21,96	7,87	2,36	67,81	100,00
1936	20,90	8,02	2,29	68,79	100,00
1946	20,78	8,13	2,50	68,59	100,00
1951	20,85	8,71	2,89	67,55	100,00
1960	19,26	9,44	2,98	68,32	100,00
1970	17,31	9,41	2,89	70,39	100,00
*1980	15,72	9,08	2,85	72,35	100,00

* Independent states (Transkei, Bophuthatswana, Venda) included.

Source: Information from Table 1.1.

groups, expressed as a percentage of the population totals of Southern Africa for 1904 to 1980.

1.2.1 Comment on Tables 1.1 and 1.2

The mean percentage increases per year and the compound annual growth rate of the four population groups of Southern Africa between 1904 and 1980 are listed below:

Population group	Mean average percentage increase	Compound annual growth rate
Whites	4,03 %	1,86 %
Coloureds	6,44 %	2,36 %
Asians	7,52 %	2,54 %
Blacks	6,56 %	2,38 %

The population figures of the three independent states (Transkei, Bophuthatswana and Venda) were added to the 1980 census figures in order to calculate the above increase in the Black population. The percentage increases and growth rates of the Asian, Black and Coloured population groups were considerably higher than those of the Whites and are arranged in the following order from highest to lowest: Asians, Blacks, Coloureds and Whites.

Despite a considerable increase in the migration of Whites from other countries over the past 76 years, Whites constituted approximately 15,7 % of the total population in 1980. From 1904 to 1980 the number of Whites decreased from 21,59 % to 15,72 % of the total population. This decrease is smaller when the 1980 figures for the three independent states are not taken into account. When disregarding these latter figures it appears that Whites constituted 18,20 % of the total population of South Africa in 1980. The relative percentage of the total population represented by Whites dropped by 27,28 % (21,59 - 15,72 = 5,87 and 5,87 is 27,19 % of 21,59) from 1904 to 1980.

In 1980 Coloureds represented 9,08 % of the total population. This reflects an increase of 5,58 % from 1904 to 1980 (9,08 - 8,60 = 0,48 and 0,48 is 5,58 % of 8,60).

In 1980 the Asians constituted 2,85 % of the total population, whereas in 1904 the corresponding figure had been 2,36 %. This again reflects a relatively large increase of 20,76 % (2,85 - 2,36 = 0,49 and 0,49 is 20,76 % of 2,36) between 1904 and 1980.

In 1980 Blacks constituted 72,35 % of the total population, compared with 67,4 % in 1904. A relative increase of 7,27 % therefore occurred from 1904 to 1980 (72,35 - 67,45 = 4,90 and 4,90 is 7,27 % of 67,45).

1.3 THE GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF THE TOTAL POPULATION OF SOUTHERN AFRICA*

1.3.1 Composition of the Southern African population according to ethnic groups

---

* Because reference in this division is made to the different censuses from 1904 to 1980, Ciskei is still regarded as self-governing and not an independent state (Ciskei only gained independence in 1981).

The fact that the Southern African population is composed of at least twelve different minority groups, each with a national language and culture, makes educational planning and the provision of education in the country exceedingly difficult and complicated. The reader is referred to Table 1.3 in this regard. The following emerged from the processed figures in this table:

- In the case of Whites the percentage representation of the total population decreased sharply.

- The percentage representation of both Coloured and Asian population groups decreased.

- As far as the Black population groups are concerned, there was a decrease in the percentage representation of the Xhosas in proportion to the total population.

- The percentage representation of the Vendas also decreased, though only very slightly.

- The percentage representation of the other Black ethnic groups (Zulu, Northern Sotho, Tswana, Southern Sotho, Shangaan/Tsonga, Swazi, Ndebele and "other Blacks") however increased in proportion to the total population. The biggest increase occurred in the case of the population figures for the Zulus, whereas the smallest increase was reported for the group referred to as the "other Blacks".

TABLE 1.3

COMPOSITION OF THE SOUTHERN AFRICAN POPULATION IN 1970 AND 1980

Population group		Number in 1970	Numbers in 1980			Percentage of total population	
			White area self-governing states	Independent states	Total	1970	1980
1	Zulu	4 180 000	5 682 520	48 173	5 730 693	19,00	19,85
2	Xhosa	4 106 000	2 987 340	2 290 232	5 277 572	18,66	18,29
3	White	3 384 000	4 528 100		4 528 100	17,43	15,70
4	Coloured	2 078 000	2 612 780		2 612 780	9,45	9,06
5	N Sotho	1 771 000	2 347 600	86 708	2 434 308	8,05	8,44
6	Tswana	1 579 000	1 357 360	888 686	2 246 046	7,18	7,79
7	S Sotho	1 383 000	1 742 060	143 654	1 885 714	6,29	6,54
8	Shangaan/Tsonga	794 000	995 840	99 177	1 095 017	3,61	3,80
9	Swazi	637 000	854 100	20 015	874 115	2,90	3,03
10	Asian	643 000	821 320		821 320	2,92	2,85
11	Ndebele	522 000	657 860	62 588	720 448	2,37	2,50
12	Venda	386 000	190 460	312 416	502 876	1,75	1,74
13	Other Blacks	86 000	108 620	10 861	119 481	0,39	0,41
	TOTAL	21 999 000	24 885 960	3 962 510	28 848 470	100,00	100,00

Sources: .Central Statistical Services (1982, p.1.9 and xv).

. BENSO (1982, Table 6).

- Besides the financial implications that such a form of differential population growth (increases/decreases) has for education, it is difficult to provide, on an equal and proportional basis, suitable teaching staff for all the different groups that continuously vary in size.

Another problem concerning planning and the provision of education is the fact that the changes in increases and decreases are never stable or static, but that they are continuously affected by a variety of factors. Owing to changing birthrates and death rates and the marked deviations from the net migration figures, it is impossible to identify permanent trends for population projections on which to base meaningful planning and according to which to make provision for rapidly changing needs.

1.3.2 Variability of geographic distribution of population groups from 1936 to 1980

Tables 1.4 and 1.5 indicate the extent of variability of the geographic distribution of the population of Southern Africa (according to population groups) from 1936 up to 1980.

The percentage representation of Whites with regard to the total population remained reasonably constant for the first three censuses (1936, 1946 and 1951), but decreased considerably since 1960.

TABLE 1.4

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF POPULATION GROUPS: 1936 - 1980: ACCORDING TO NUMBERS IN THOUSANDS

Census year	Region	Total	Whites	Coloureds	Asians	Blacks
1936	South Africa	9 590	2 004	770	220	6 597
	Cape Province	3 530	792	682	11	2 046
	Natal	1 946	191	19	184	1 554
	Transvaal	3 341	821	51	25	2 444
	OFS*	772	201	18	0	553
1946	South Africa	11 418	2 373	928	285	7 832
	Cape Province	4 054	871	830	15	2 338
	Natal	2 202	237	25	232	1 708
	Transvaal	4 283	1 063	60	38	3 122
	OFS	879	202	14	0	663
1951	South Africa	12 675	2 642	1 103	367	8 560
	Cape Province	4 427	935	982	18	2 492
	Natal	2 415	274	31	299	1 810
	Transvaal	4 813	1 205	75	49	3 484
	OFS	1 017	228	15	0	774
1960	South Africa	16 003	3 088	1 509	477	10 928
	Cape Province	5 363	1 003	1 330	18	3 011
	Natal	2 980	340	45	395	2 200
	Transvaal	6 273	1 468	108	64	4 633
	OFS	1 387	277	26	0	1 084
1970	South Africa	21 794	3 773	2 051	630	15 340
	Cape Province	6 848	1 120	1 789	21	3 917
	Natal	4 316	443	70	527	3 275
	Transvaal	8 881	1 909	155	82	6 735
	OFS	1 750	300	37	0	1 413
	National states	7 175	20	13	4	7 138
1980	South Africa	28 933	4 537	2 689	822	20 886
	Cape Province	5 091	1 264	2 226	32	1 569
	Natal	2 676	562	91	665	1 358
	Transvaal	8 351	2 362	228	116	5 645
	OFS	1 932	326	56	0	1 550
	National states	10 883	22	87	9	10 765

Sources: STATS monthly statistical and marketing digest Vol 19 No 1 ISSN 0379-8836 January 1983 (p. 6).
(Source: Research Unit for Sociology of Development, Stellenbosch.
Notes: Figures for South Africa and the Provinces include areas defined as Black states from 1936 to 1970 for 1980, figures for Black states are included in the South African population figures but excluded from the Provincial figures. Figures for Black states are indicated separately for 1970 and 1980 only.)

* Orange Free State.

TABLE 1.5

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF POPULATION GROUPS: 1936-1980: ACCORDING TO PERCENTAGES

Census year	Total	Whites	Coloureds	Asians	Blacks
1936	99,99	20,89	8,03	2,29	68,78
1946	100,00	20,78	8,13	2,50	68,59
1951	100,00	20,85	8,70	2,90	67,55
1960	100,00	19,30	9,43	2,98	68,29
1970	100,00	17,31	9,41	2,89	70,39
1980	100,00	15,68	9,29	2,84	72,19

Source: STATS monthly statistical and marketing digest Vol 19 No 1 ISSN 0379-8836 January 1983 (p. 6).
(Source: Research Unit for Sociology of Development, Stellenbosch. Notes: Figures for South Africa and the Provinces include areas defined as Black states from 1936 to 1970 for 1980, figures for Black states are included in the South African population figures but excluded from the Provincial figures. Figures for Black states are indicated separately for 1970 and 1980 only.)

The percentage representation of Coloureds with regard to the total population gradually increased until 1960 and then started decreasing slowly.

The percentage representation of Asians in proportion to the total population remained reasonably constant. The highest percentage was reached in 1960, after which it also started decreasing slowly.

The percentage of the total population represented by Blacks remained reasonably constant namely 68 % for 1936, 1946, 1951 and 1960, but increased rapidly to 72,19 % from 1970 to 1980.

1.3.3 Geographic distribution of population groups in 1970 and 1980

(1) Introduction

In 1982 a considerable number of processed population statistics obtained in the 1980 census were made available by the Central Statistical Services in detailed and systematized form. Some of this information is summarized in Table 1.6 (Geographic distribution of the four population groups in Southern Africa in 1970 and 1980) and processed in Tables 1.7 and 1.8 in respect of the number and percentage increases and decreases with a view to obtaining an overall picture of the spatial distribution pattern of the mobile and heterogeneous population structures of Southern Africa.

TABLE 1.6

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF THE FOUR POPULATION GROUPS OF SOUTHERN AFRICA IN RESPECT OF 1970 AND 1980

Region	Year	White	Coloured	Asian	Black	Total
Southern Africa	1970	3 773 282	2 050 699	630 372	15 339 975	21 794 328
	1980	4 537 935	2 621 686	821 545	20 886 270	28 867 436
White area	1970	3 753 072	2 037 627	626 753	8 201 778	14 619 230
	1980	4 514 180	2 601 440	813 020	10 121 420	18 050 060
Self-governing & independent states	1970	20 210	13 072	3 619	7 138 197	7 175 098
	1980	23 755	20 246	8 525	10 764 850	10 817 376
Self-governing states	1970	20 210	13 072	3 619	7 138 197	7 175 098
	1980	13 920	11 340	8 300	6 802 340	6 835 900
Independent states	*1970					
	1980	9 835	8 906	225	3 962 510	3 981 476
White area	1970	3 753 072	2 037 627	626 753	8 201 778	14 619 230
	1980	4 514 180	2 601 440	813 020	10 121 420	18 050 060
Cape Province	1970	1 109 209	1 778 387	21 102	1 385 028	4 293 726
	1980	1 264 040	2 226 160	32 120	1 569 040	5 091 360
Natal	1970	439 570	68 095	523 918	1 132 897	2 164 480
	1980	561 860	91 020	665 340	1 358 120	2 676 340
Transvaal	1970	1 904 093	154 836	81 733	4 338 242	6 478 904
	1980	2 362 060	228 220	115 560	5 644 660	8 350 500
Orange Free State	1970	300 200	36 309	0	1 345 611	1 682 120
	1980	326 220	56 040	0	1 549 600	1 931 860
Self-governing states	1970	20 210	13 072	3 619	7 138 197	7 175 098
	1980	13 920	11 340	8 300	6 802 340	6 835 900
Ciskei	1970	1 317	2 320		534 732	538 369
	1980	2 220	5 620	640	669 340	677 820
Gazankulu	1970	406	40		271 490	271 936
	1980	1 500	620	160	512 000	514 280
KaNgwane	1970	273	17		119 804	120 094
	1980	420	100	40	160 600	161 160
KwaNdebele	**1970					
	1980	60	40	20	156 260	156 380
KwaZulu	1970	3 726	1 813	3 535	2 142 293	2 151 367
	1980	4 460	2 560	6 920	3 408 200	3 422 140
Lebowa	1970	2 727	89	38	1 105 605	1 108 459
	1980	4 500	2 020	520	1 739 460	1 746 500
Qwaqwa	1970	145			25 189	25 334
	1980	760	380		156 480	157 620

TABLE 1.6 (cont.)

Region	Year	White	Coloured	Asian	Black	Total
Independent states	1970					
	1980	9 835	8 906	225	3 962 510	3 981 476
Bophuthatswana	***1970	1 929	1 229	32	900 693	903 883
	1980	2 356	2 966		1 323 315	1 328 637
Transkei	***1970	9 147	7 526	11	1 766 520	1 783 204
	1980	6 826	5 885	219	2 323 650	2 336 580
Venda	***1970	540	38	3	271 871	272 452
	1980	653	55	6	315 545	316 259

* In 1970 no independent states yet existed.

** In 1970 KwaNdebele did not yet exist as a self-governing state.

***Bophuthatswana, Transkei and Venda were still self-governing states and not yet independent states.

Sources:. Department of Statistics (1980, p.1.14).
. Central Statistical Services (June 1982, p.1 and 2).
. Central Statistical Services (1982, p.1.9).
. BENSO (November 1982, Table 6).
. BENSO supplies information obtained by telephone from the Central Statistical Services concerning the 1980 population census (March 1983):

Independent state	White	Coloured	Asian
Transkei	6 826	5 885	219
Bophuthatswana	2 356	2 966	
Venda	653	55	6
Total	9 835	8 906	225

TABLE 1.7

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF THE FOUR POPULATION GROUPS OF SOUTHERN AFRICA IN RESPECT OF THE PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION FOR 1970 AND 1980

Region	Year	White	Coloured	Asian	Black	Entire population	% increase or decrease
Southern Africa	1970	17,31	9,41	2,89	70,39	100,00	
	1980	15,72	9,08	2,85	72,35	100,00	
White area	1970	25,01	14,41	4,51	56,07	67,08	
	1980	25,67	13,94	4,29	56,10	62,53	-4,55
Self-governing & independent states	1970	0,28	0,18	0,05	99,49	32,92	
	1980	0,22	0,19	0,08	99,51	37,47	+4,55
Self-governing states	1970	0,28	0,18	0,05	99,49	32,92	
	1980	0,20	0,17	0,12	99,51	23,68	-9,24
Independent states	1970						
	1980	0,25	0,22	0,01	99,52	13,79	+13,79
White area	1970	25,67	13,94	4,29	56,10	67,08	
	1980	25,02	14,41	4,50	56,07	62,53	-4,55
Cape Province	1970	25,83	41,42	0,49	32,26	19,70	
	1980	24,83	43,72	0,63	30,82	17,64	-2,06
Natal	1970	20,31	3,15	24,21	52,33	9,93	
	1980	20,99	3,40	24,86	50,75	9,27	-0,66
Transvaal	1970	29,39	2,39	1,26	66,96	29,73	
	1980	28,29	2,73	1,38	67,60	28,93	-0,80
Orange Free State	1970	17,85	2,16		79,99	7,72	
	1980	16,89	2,90		80,21	6,69	-1,03
Self-governing states	1970	0,28	0,18	0,05	99,49	32,92	
	1980	0,20	0,17	0,12	99,51	23,68	-9,24
Bophuthatswana	1970**	0,21	0,14	0,00	99,65	4,15	
	1980						-4,15
Ciskei	1970	0,24	0,43		99,33	2,47	
	1980	0,33	0,83	0,09	98,75	2,35	-0,12
Gazankulu	1970	0,15	0,01		99,84	1,24	
	1980	0,29	0,12	0,03	99,56	1,78	+0,54
KaNgwane	1970	0,23	0,01		99,76	0,55	
	1980	0,26	0,06	0,03	99,65	0,56	+0,01
*KwaNdebele	1970						
	1980	0,04	0,03	0,01	99,92	0,54	+0,54
KwaZulu	1970	0,18	0,08	0,16	99,58	9,87	
	1980	0,13	0,08	0,20	99,59	11,85	+1,98
Lebowa	1970	0,25	0,01	0,00	99,74	5,09	
	1980	0,26	0,12	0,02	99,60	6,05	+0,96
Qwaqwa	1970	0,57			99,43	0,12	
	1980	0,48	0,24		99,28	0,55	+0,43
Transkei	1970**	0,20	0,01	0,00	99,77	8,18	
	1980						-8,18
Venda	1970**	0,39	0,30	0,00	99,31	1,25	
	1980						-1,25
Independent states	1970						
	1980	0,25	0,22	0,01	99,52	13,79	+13,79
Bophuthatswana	1970**						
	1980	0,18	0,22		99,60	4,60	+4,60
Transkei	1970**						
	1980	0,21	0,02	0,00	99,31	8,09	+8,09
Venda	1970**						
	1980	0,25	0,22	0,01	99,52	1,10	+1,10

* In 1970 KwaNdebele did not yet exist as a self-governing state.

** Bophuthatswana, Transkei and Venda were still self-governing states.

Source: Table 1.6.

TABLE 1.8

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF THE FOUR POPULATION GROUPS OF SOUTHERN AFRICA IN RESPECT OF THE NUMBER AND PERCENTAGE INCREASES AND DECREASES FOR 1970 AND 1980

Region	White	%	Coloured	%	Asian	%	Black	%	Total	%
Southern Africa	764 653	20,27	570 987	27,84	191 173	30,33	5 546 295	36,16	7 073 108	32,45
White area	761 108	20,28	563 813	27,67	186 267	29,24	1 919 642	23,41	3 430 830	23,47
Self-governing and independent states	3 545	17,54	7 174	54,88	4 906	135,56	3 626 653	50,81	3 642 278	50,76
* Self-governing states	-6 290	-31,12	-1 732	-13,25	4 681	129,35	-335 857	-4,71	-339 198	-4,73
* Independent states										
White area	761 108	20,28	563 813	27,67	186 267	29,72	1 919 642	23,41	3 430 830	23,47
Cape Province	154 831	13,96	447 773	25,18	11 018	52,21	184 012	13,29	797 634	18,58
Natal	122 290	27,82	22 925	33,67	141 422	26,99	225 223	19,88	511 860	23,65
Transvaal	457 967	24,05	73 384	47,39	33 827	41,39	1 306 418	30,11	1 871 596	28,89
Orange Free State	26 020	8,67	19 731	54,34			203 989	15,16	249 740	14,85
* Self-governing states	5 326	61,97	7 061	165,02	4 727	132,30	2 603 227	61,99	2 620 341	62,16
Ciskei	903	68,56	3 300	142,24			134 608	25,17	139 451	25,90
Gazankulu	1 094	269,46	580	1450,00			240 510	88,59	242 344	89,12
KaNgwane	147	53,85	83	488,24			40 796	34,05	41 066	34,19
** KwaNdebele										
KwaZulu	734	19,70	747	41,20	3 385	95,76	1 265 907	59,09	1 270 773	59,07
Lebowa	1 773	65,02	1 931	2169,66	482	1286,42	633 855	51,33	638 041	57,56
Qwaqwa	615	424,14					131 291	521,22	132 286	522,17
* Independent states	-1 781	-15,33	113	1,29	179	389,13	1 023 426	34,82	1 021 937	34,53
* Bophuthatswana	427	22,14	1 737	141,33			422 622	46,92	424 754	46,99
* Transkei	-2 321	-25,37	-1 641	-21,80	208	1890,91	557 130	31,54	553 376	31,03
* Venda	113	20,93	17	44,74	3	100,00	43 674	16,06	43 807	16,08

* In 1970 Bophuthatswana, Transkei and Venda were still self-governing states, but in 1980 they had already become independent states.

** 1970 KwaNdebele did not yet exist as a self-governing state.

Source: Table 1.6.

The comment on these three tables correspond closely with the remarks of Smit and Kok on population shifts (January 1981; October 1981).

As far as Table 1.6 is concerned, the reader's attention is drawn to the fact that the figures given for the Black population for 1980 include the population figures of the three independent states (Transkei, Bophuthatswana and Venda).

Some of the reasons for the inclusion of the population figures of the three independent states concerned have already been discussed in the introduction to Chapter 1. Additional reasons in this regard are the following:

The inhabitants of Transkei, Bophuthatswana and Venda do not belong exclusively to the Xhosa, Tswana and Venda population groups respectively, but other Blacks of different ethnic origin also live in these three republics (see Table 1.9). Large numbers of Xhosas, Tswanas and Vendas on the other hand also live in some of the self-governing national states (Ciskei, Qwaqwa, KwaZulu, Lebowa, Gazankulu, KwaNdebele and KaNgwane) and in the White area governed by the Republic of South Africa (see Table 1.9). If, especially after 1970, certain Black population groups were to be disregarded in this investigation either completely or in part, this would lead to problems and malrepresentations and render meaningful comparisons and/or deductions impossible.

TABLE 1.9

GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF BLACK POPULATION OF SOUTHERN AFRICA ACCORDING TO POPULATION GROUPS: 1970 AND 1980

Region and year		Xhosa	Zulu	Swazi	Ndebele	N Sotho	S Sotho	Tswana	Shangaan/ Tsonga	Venda	Other Blacks	Total	% of populaton
Cape Province	1970	1 108 890	8 052	533		2 407	31 517	182 597	757	295	49 980	1 385 028	9,03
	1980	1 279 220	11 780	1 140	760	7 320	40 360	213 020	1 260	640	13 540	1 569 040	7,51
Natal	1970	78 109	1 004 637	6 533		1 689	16 160	948	1 792	172	22 857	1 132 897	7,39
	1980	117 940	1 188 560	7 380	1 400	3 000	26 640	2 840	4 900	680	4 780	1 358 120	6,50
Transvaal	1970	367 805	774 209	360 101		599 135	426 753	787 001	259 110	106 258	657 870	4 338 242	28,28
	1980	603 100	923 700	649 020	387 660	847 460	632 300	962 340	390 380	174 200	74 500	5 644 660	27,00
OFS	1970	185 133	128 027	4 363		9 536	769 511	116 356	2 839	959	128 887	1 345 611	8,77
	1980	269 840	181 240	11 080	27 000	12 740	874 480	155 260	9 600	2 200	6 160	1 549 600	7,41
Total White area	1970	1 739 937	1 914 925	371 530		612 767	1 243 941	1 086 902	264 498	107 684	859 594	8 201 778	53,47
	1980	2 270 100	2 305 280	668 620	416 820	870 520	1 573 780	1 333 460	406 140	177 720	98 980	10 121 420	48,46
Percentage incease		30,47	20,38	79,96		42,06	26,52	22,63	53,55	65,04	- 88,43	23,41	
Ciskei	1970	519 764	192	35		49	13 636	155	137	24	740	534 732	3,49
	1980	664 100	380	40	280	240	3 680	120	60	60	380	669 340	3,20
Gazankulu	1970	142	866	2 689		26 209	339	130	236 127	3 673	1 315	271 490	1,77
	1980	540	5 280	10 740	500	46 200	2 180	600	439 740	5 420	800	512 000	2,45
KaNgwane	1970	139	21 562	82 327		3 479	486	120	10 676	20	995	119 804	0,78
	1980	640	10 280	123 920	820	1 660	800	140	21 420	120	800	160 600	0,77
KwaNdebele	1970												
	1980	1 660	8 280	9 880	102 500	19 440	4 820	3 420	4 820	1 000	440	156 260	0,75

TABLE 1.9 (cont.)

		Xhosa	Zulu	Swazi	Ndebele	N Sotho	S Sotho	Tswana	Shangaan/ Tsonga	Venda	Other Blacks	Total	% of population
KwaZulu	1970	16 659	2 091 382	6 734		612	17 773	454	1 238	115	7 326	2 142 293	13,97
	1980	44 400	3 315 960	10 360	1 840	2 160	20 820	7 920	2 780	489	1 480	3 408 200	16,30
Lebowa	1970	3 330	7 406	10 338		915 297	1 794	9 556	76 041	2 929	78 914	1 105 605	7,21
	1980	3 340	14 400	29 260	132 940	1 406 060	10 580	10 660	120 820	5 660	5 740	1 739 460	8,32
Qwaqwa	1970	52	360	8		13	24 296	62	4	2	392	25 189	0,16
	1980	2 560	22 660	1 280	2 160	1 320	125 400	1 040	60	0	0	156 480	0,75
Transkei	1970	1 680 011	21 234	247		252	60 459	175	939	19	3 184	1 766 520	11,52
	1980	2 229 782	3 574	0		0	89 657	0	0	0	637	2 323 650	
Bophuthatswana	1970	28 234	26 986	9 054		67 920	24 638	606 328	56 891	5 399	75 243	900 693	5,87
	1980	60 357	44 431	19 961	62 536	83 932	53 697	888 519	90 621	9 515	9 746	1 323 315	6,33
Venda	1970	136	187	110		1 536	251	320	17 972	244 924	435	271 871	1,77
	1980	93	168	54	52	2 776	300	167	8 556	302 901	478	315 545	1,51
Total self-governing and independent states	1970	2 248 467	2 170 175	111 542		1 021 367	143 672	617 300	400 025	257 105	168 544	7 138 197	46,53
	1980	3 007 472	3 425 413	205 495	303 628	1 563 788	311 934	912 586	688 877	325 156	20 501	10 764 850	51,54
Percentage increases		33,76	57,84	84,23		53,11	117,12	47,84	72,21	26,47	-87,84	50,81	
GRAND TOTAL all areas	1970	3 988 404	4 085 100	483 072		1 634 134	1 387 613	1 704 202	664 523	364 789	1 028 138	15 339 975	100,00
	1980	5 277 572	5 730 693	874 115	720 448	2 434 308	1 885 714	2 246 046	1 095 017	502 876	119 481	20 886 270	100,00
Percentage increases		32,32	40,28	80,95		48,97	35,90	31,79	64,78	37,85	-88,38	36,15	
Percentage of Black population	1970	26,00	26,63	3,15		10,65	9,05	11,11	4,33	2,38	6,70	100,00	
	1980	25,27	27,43	4,19	3,45	11,16	9,03	10,75	5,24	2,41	0,57	100,00	

Sources:
- Department of Stätistics (1980,p.1.14 and 1.15).
- Central Statistical Services (June 1982, p.3 and 4) and 1982, p.1.9 and 1.10).
- BENSO (November 1982, Table 6).

Reciprocal migration occurs very frequently, not only among the three Black population groups under discussion, but also among the other Blacks and among Whites, Coloureds and Asians. The respective population groups depend on one another almost permanently, especially with regard to job opportunities and other aspects of the economy.

The question of the borders of the different self-governing national and independent states is still being discussed by the institutions concerned and the corresponding consolidation of land has not yet been finalized. The matter naturally concerns not only the Black population groups, but also the Whites, Coloureds and Asians.

The Republic of South Africa's policy on regional planning and development and on the decentralization of industries also makes provision for the self-governing national and independent states and inevitably has an effect on the migration of all population groups.

(2) Comment on tables

Tables 1.6, 1.7 and 1.8 were included in this investigation solely for comparison purposes. Table 1.6 contains the statistics of the latest census (1980) as well as the 1970 census data. The possibility of an undercount, particularly among Blacks, appears to be much slighter for these two censuses than for earlier ones. (Mostert, 1981: 2; Smit and Kok, October 1981: 11).

Comment on Tables 1.6, 1.7 and 1.8:

- According to Table 1.8 the percentage increase between 1970 and 1980 for the entire population of all areas together was 32,45 %. The biggest increase was recorded for Blacks (36,16 %), followed by Asians (30,33 %), Coloureds (27,84 %) and Whites (20,27 %).

- Table 1.7 indicates that Blacks constituted the largest part of the total population for both census years (1970 and 1980), followed by Whites, Coloureds and Asians.

- From 1970 to 1980 the percentage representation of the respective population groups in proportion to the total population (see Table 1.6) changed as follows: The percentages calculated for Coloureds in 1980 differ somewhat from those in Table 1.5 owing to the fact that different sources were used (the information used in Table 1.6 was extracted from the latest available publications released by the Central Statistical Services and the Bureau for Economic Research: Co-operation and Development.)

  Whites: Decreased from 17,31 % to 15,72 %, in other words by 1,59 %.

  Coloureds: Decreased from 9,41 % to 9,08 %, in other words by 0,33 %.

Asians: Decreased from 2,89 % to 2,85 %, in other words by 0,04 %.

Blacks: Increased from 70,39 % to 72,35 %, in other words by 1,96 %.

- Table 1.6 also contains a distribution according to different areas: Southern Africa (all the areas together); the White area; the self-governing national and independent states (separately and as one); the four provinces (Cape, Orange Free State, Transvaal and Natal); the seven self-governing national states (Ciskei, Gazankulu, KaNgwane, KwaNdebele, KwaZulu, Lebowa and Qwaqwa), as well as the three independent states (Bophuthatswana, Transkei and Venda).

- The percentage increases were calculated for every region and for every population group, as well as for the four population groups together (see Table 1.8).

- Concerning the entire population group, percentage increases until 1980 were based on the 1970 figures: 28,89 % in the Transvaal, 23,65 % in Natal, 18,58 % in the Cape Province and 14,85 % in the Orange Free State.

- The percentage increases of Whites in 1980 were based on the 1970 figures and amounted to 27,82 % in Natal, 24,05 % in Transvaal, 13,96 % in the Cape Province and 8,67 % in the Orange Free State.

- The corresponding increases for Blacks were 30,11 % in the Transvaal, 19,88% in Natal, 15,16 % in the Orange Free State and 13,29 % in the Cape Province.

- According to Table 1.8 the self-governing national and independent states experienced a tremendous increase in their population figures for all four population groups, namely 50,76 %. The percentage increase of Blacks alone in all the states was 50,81 %.

- As far as the global distribution of the total population in the respective areas is concerned, the following emerged from Table 1.7:

  The Cape Province shows the largest decrease in its percentage representation within the total population, namely 2,06 %; next follows the Orange Free State with a 1,03 % decrease, the Transvaal with 0,80 %, and last of all Natal with the smallest decrease of 0,66 %.

  The self-governing national and independent states together show the only increase, 4,55 %, and this points to a migration of Blacks to these areas.

- Most areas are accommodated within the borders of the former province of the Transvaal, namely the present province of the Transvaal plus six self-governing national and independent states (Lebowa, KaNgwane, Gazankulu, KwaNdebele, Venda and a large part of Bophuthatswana). The major section of the total population, counting a total of approximately 12,5 million people (8,4 + 1,7 + 0,2 + 0,5 + 0,2 + 0,2 + 1,3 respectively), is thus concentrated in this part of the country (see Table 1.6):

- In the remaining areas the rest of the total population is distributed as follows (see Table 1.6):

  The former Cape Province with approximately 8,1 million inhabitants (present Cape Province 5,1 + Transkei 2,3 + Ciskei 0,7);

  the former Natal with approximately 6,1 million (present province of Natal 2,7 + KwaZulu 3,4); and

  the former Orange Free State with approximately 2,1 million (present province of the Orange Free State 1,9 + Qwaqwa 0,2).

- The majority of Asians live in Natal, the majority of Coloureds in the Cape, the majority of Whites in the Transvaal and most Blacks in the self-governing national and independent states.

- On the whole it appears that the largest migration increases occurred within the provincial borders of the Transvaal - which includes Gazankulu, Lebowa and a large part of

Bophuthatswana. Then Natal follows with KwaZulu falling within its provincial borders.

- Consequently whenever educational planning is concerned, the preceding information concerning the migration of the four different population groups can never be disregarded, as it involves the entire infrastructure of each of these areas and its people. These realities regarding the redistribution of the different population groups in Southern Africa have to be taken into account when considering, preparing and submitting proposals for regional planning and draft budgets, particularly for education. The same goes for the allocation of funds to the different education departments of the respective population groups by Treasury.

1.3.4 Geographic distribution of the Black population in 1970 and 1980

In the previous tables all the Black population groups were grouped together, but Table 1.9 provides statistics on the geographic distribution of the Black population in 1970 and 1980 according to ethnic origin.

In order to make provision for the constitutional aspirations and developments of the different Black population groups of Southern Africa, references throughout the report are made to the various self-governing national and independent states that were introduced in terms of new legislation. This has a constant effect on the population and education statistics for the population groups concerned, as well as for those for the total population. Tables 1.10 and 1.11 were deliberately included in the report with a view to enabling the reader to see the development of the Southern African situation in perspective. Table 1.10 gives a chronological account of the constitutional development of each of the Black ethnic groups. It also indicates the date when a regional authority was introduced, when it came into effect, when a legislative assembly with Chapter I and Chapter II rights (full independence) was instituted and, where applicable, when independence was gained. Table 1.11 contains a schematic representation of the constitutional development of all national states since 1956. There is a distinct relation between the stages of constitutional and educational development in each of these Black states. It also became clear that after gaining independence, a Black area started managing its own education affairs through an own education department, minister, secretary for education, etc. The Department of Education and Training (before 1978 known as the Department of Bantu Education) was included in Table 1.11 to provide a complete picture, but actually falls under the Republic of South Africa and controls the education of all Blacks in the White area. The Department of Education and Training can be regarded as the "mother department" of Black education in Southern Africa and the education departments of the different self-governing national and independent states as the "daughter departments" that developed from it.

As far as Table 1.9 is concerned the following remarks are applicable:

TABLE 1.10

BLACK DEVELOPMENT IN SOUTHERN AFRICA: CONSTITUTIONAL

Black state	Regional authority instituted and assumed power	Legislative Assembly	Independence National Assembly
Transkei	1 September 1956	Instituted on 30 May 1963	Instituted on 26 October 1976
Bophuthatswana	21 April 1961 and 14 October 1968	1 May 1971 (Ch.I rights) 1 June 1972 (Ch.II rights)	6 December 1977
Venda	9 November 1962 (both)	1 June 1971 (Ch.I rights) 1 February 1973 (Ch.II rights)	13 September 1979
Ciskei	24 March 1961 and 20 September 1968	1 June 1971 (Ch. I rights) 1 August 1972 (Ch. II rights)	4 December 1981
KwaZulu	20 May 1970 (both)	30 March 1972 (Ch.I rights) 1 February 1977 (Ch.II rights)	
Qwaqwa	1 April 1969 (both)	1 October 1971 (Ch.I rights) 1 November 1974 (Ch.II rights)	
Lebowa	10 August 1962 and 16 September 1969	1 July 1971 (Ch.I rights) 20 October 1972 (Ch.II rights)	
Gazankulu	9 November 1962 and 1 August 1969	1 July 1971 (Ch.I rights) 1 February 1973 (Ch.II rights)	
KaNgwane	28 November 1975 (both)	1 October 1977 (Ch.I rights)	
KwaNdebele	24 November 1977 (both)	1 November 1979 (Ch.I rights) 1 April 1981 (Ch.II rights)	

Sources: . BENSO (1979, Table 1a).
. BENSO (1981, Table I).

TABLE 1.11

BLACK DEVELOPMENT IN SOUTHERN AFRICA : CONSTITUTIONAL, INCLUDING EDUCATION

Year	Bophutha-tswana	Ciskei	Gazankulu	KaNgwane	KwaNdebele	KwaZulu	Lebowa	Qwaqwa	Transkei	Venda	@Education and Training
1956									**		////
1957									**		////
1958									**		////
1959									**		////
1960									**		////
1961	*	*							**		////
1962	*	*	*				*		**	**	////
1963	*	*	*				*		&&	**	////
1964	*	*	*				*		&&	**	////
1965	*	*	*				*		&&	**	////
1966	*	*	*				*		&&	**	////
1967	*	*	*				*		&&	**	////
1968	**	**	*				*		&&	**	////
1969	**	**	**				**	**	&&	**	////
1970	**	**	**			**	**	**	&&	**	////
1971	&	&	&			**	&	&	&&	&	////
1972	&&	&&	&			&	&&	&	&&	&	////
1973	&&	&&	&&			&	&&	&	&&	&&	////
1974	&&	&&	&&			&	&&	&&	&&	&&	////
1975	&&	&&	&&	**		&	&&	&&	&&	&&	////
1976	&&	&&	&&	**		&	&&	&&	$	&&	////
1977	$	&&	&&	&	**	&&	&&	&&	$	&&	////
1978	$	&&	&&	&	**	&&	&&	&&	$	&&	////
1979	$	&&	&&	&	&	&&	&&	&&	$	$	////
1980	$	&&	&&	&	&	&&	&&	&&	$	$	////
1981	$	$	&&	&	&&	&&	&&	&&	$	$	////
1982	$	$	&&	&	&&	&&	&&	&&	$	$	////
1983	$	$	&&	&	&&	&&	&&	&&	$	$	////
1984	$	$	&&	&	&&	&&	&&	&&	$	$	////

Reference:

*	Regional authority instituted (self-rule).
**	Regional authority assumed power (self-rule).
&	Legislative Assembly: Chapter I rights (self-government).
&&	Legislative Assembly: Chapter II rights (self-government).
$	National Assembly: gained independence.
////	Government department of RSA.
@	Before 1978 known as Bantu Education.

Sources: .BENSO (1979, Table Ia).
.BENSO (1981, Table I).

There were altogether 20 886 270 Blacks in Southern Africa in 1980. Of these a total of 10 764 850 (i.e. 51,54 %) lived in the self-governing national and independent states, while the rest, 10 121 420 (i.e. 48,46 %) lived in the White area. In 1970 the total Black population came to 15 339 975, with 7 138 197 (or 46,53 %) living in the self-managing areas with regional authorities and in one self-governing national state, while 8 201 778 (or 53,47 %) lived in the White area. (In 1970 Southern Africa did not yet have any independent states and only one self-governing national state, Transkei, existed at that stage.)

The following remarks concern Blacks in the White area:

In 1970 Blacks living in the White area constituted 53,4 7% of the total Black population. This percentage decreased to 48,46 % in 1980 - i.e. a decrease of 5,01 %. The Cape Province proportionately lost the biggest number and Natal the smallest number of Blacks. On the whole the number of Blacks in the White area increased with 23,41 %.

Members of the Zulu nation constitute the biggest number of Blacks in the White area, followed by Xhosas.

A striking feature is the fact that the number of "other Blacks" decreased by 88,48 % within the ten years from 1970 to 1980. One possible explanation could be that a large number of these "foreign" Blacks were accepted in some ethnic group or other of the Black population of the country because they had become more aware of their ethnic origin.

Remarks on the self-governing national and independent states:

During the ten years between 1970 and 1980 the total Black population in these states increased from 46,53 % to 51,54 % of the total Black population. This represents a relative increase of 5,01 %. In terms of the different ethnic groups the Southern Sotho (with 117,12 %) reported the biggest increase, followed by the Swazi (with 84,23 %), whereas the smallest increases were reported by the Venda (26,47 %) and the Xhosa (33,76 %).

By far the biggest increase in Black population between 1970 and 1980 was reported by Qwaqwa, namely 521,22 %, followed by Gazankulu with 88,59 %.

The lowest increase in population between 1970 and 1980 was recorded by Venda (16,06 %), followed by Ciskei (25,17 %).

KwaNdebele and Qwaqwa have approximately the same total number of inhabitants, but the former only became a self-governing national state after 1970.

As in the case of the White area the number of "other Blacks" in the self-governing national and independent states also decreased sharply (87,84 %). Some of the "foreign" Blacks apparently left the country, while others had themselves classified into specific ethnic groups.

Transkei had the biggest population of the three independent states, and KwaZulu the biggest of the seven self-governing national states - approximately 2,32 million and 3,41 million respectively.

The total number of Blacks in the self-governing national and independent states increased by an absolute figure of 3 626 653 during the period 1970 to 1980. This increase is almost twice as large as the increase in the number of Blacks in the White area (1 919 642).

In 1980 the different percentage composition of the Xhosas, Southern Sothos and Tswanas of the total Black population decreased to a small extent, compared with their figures for 1970. The remaining ethnic groups showed small percentage increases.

1.3.5 Factors responsible for the geographic redistribution of population groups and the way in which their future development may be affected by these factors

Smit (1981) deals with the matter of geographic redistribution in his article entitled Bevolkingstendense in die RSA. Enkele implikasies vir die onderwys that appeared in the November edition of Aambeeld , Volume 9 (4). In that article the author mentions a variety of factors that could lead to geographic redistribution and an indication is given of the way in which they could affect future development.

(1) White population

- The fertility norms among Whites changed dramatically within a relatively short period. The birthrate of Whites was affected by factors such as political instability, increase in the cost of living, housing shortages, compulsory military training that delays entrance to the labour market, growing numbers of women who are either compelled to work or who prefer to work away from home to earn a salary and thus delay the family-building process.

- The seventies were characterized by radical government changes in Angola and Mozambique, which led to political instability in Southern Africa. These events were preceded by the Sharpeville shooting and the gaining of republican status by the former Union of South Africa. This led to many White South Africans feeling uncertain about their future. This changed political and socio-economic climate in particular strongly influenced the birthrate of the White population in the Republic of South Africa.

- The first result of the declining birthrate among Whites is an expected drop in the figures of primary school pupils; secondly the training and provision of new teachers for primary schools will most probably be affected and thirdly numerous

White teachers may probably become redundant. Though Smit (1981: 5) appeals for the use of the expected surplus of White teachers for the elimination of shortages in this regard among Blacks and Coloureds, the great shortage of qualified primary school teachers in schools for Blacks and Coloureds will not be eliminated or reduced in this way. The use of mother tongue instruction in Black education up to the end of Standard 2 would make it impossible to utilize the services of the surplus White teachers for the initial classes, because the majority of these teachers would probably not be able to speak the relevant Black languages. As far as the Coloured population is concerned the problem would not be an easy one to handle either, because teacher shortages in the Coloured population need not necessarily always occur in the areas where extra White teachers are available. Moving such White teachers to areas where their services might probably be utilized would result in enormous expense for the government. The same argument could be raised with regard to Blacks. Other problems that could face these teachers would be matters concerning their housing, and teaching pupils who belong to other population groups with different habits and lifestyles, cultures and religions.

- The future numbers of pupils/students at secondary and tertiary educational institutions for Whites are also expected to decrease gradually owing to the declining birthrate of Whites. Although only at a later stage, it can also be expected that the growth of certain White universities will be considerably affected.

- Another significant effect of the declining birthrate among Whites concerns the provision of high-level manpower, particularly when considering the future needs of the South African labour force. In terms of numbers the White population at this stage is no longer in a position to provide for all the country's high-level manpower needs. The other three population groups, and Blacks in particular, will have to start making a substantial contribution in this regard as soon as possible. This will result in a marked change in the ethnic composition of the future Southern African labour force. The shortage of high-level manpower cannot be eliminated by mere numbers and special attention will have to be paid to workers' ability to render quality work and to be more productive.

- The situation described will therefore require important and radical directional changes in the field of formal and non-formal education and training. In future merit will have to be the only criterion applying to all population groups.

(2) Coloured population

- Already since the second half of the sixties there has been an absolute decline in the number of births among the Coloured population.

- On account of the high birthrate of the Coloured population in the past the group has a more youthful demographic profile than the Whites.

- The provision of schools to the Coloured population will have to remain a high priority for the rest of the twentieth century and authorities should take cognizance of this fact.

- Special attention should be given to the training of Coloureds and the creation of job opportunities for them. Besides the provision of training personnel and facilities, special provision should be made in regional planning and development for the creation of job opportunities for Coloureds in specific regions. What is at issue here is not special job reservation for Coloureds, but the making available of sufficient job opportunities for Coloureds also.

- It should be borne in mind that the net population growth of the Coloured population can be expected to remain relatively high for at least the rest of the century.

(3) Asian population

- Since more than 90 % of the Asian population has already been urbanized and their socio-economic circumstances are rapidly improving, Asians are to an increasing extent adopting the demographic profile of the White population. Parity between Asians and Whites in different fields therefore seems to be possible in the near future.

- Although the number of Asians can be expected to exceed the one million figure towards the end of the twentieth century, the pupil numbers for this group will tend to decrease. Education authorities should timeously take cognizance of this fact with a view to the planning and provision of education.

(4) Black population

- The natural growth rate of the Black population remains extremely high.

- The Black population is rapidly becoming urbanized, but at this stage it is not yet clear what effect this will have on the birthrate of Blacks. According to Smit (1981: 9) only 38 % of the Black population has been urbanized compared with 89 % of the Whites.

- The mortality rate of Blacks has declined sharply, particularly in the rural areas, and specifically among children.

The natural growth rate for Blacks is still expected to remain high for a long time, and according to Smit (1981: 9) it may even increase.

- The high birthrate of the Black population has all the demographic features of a youthful population. This implies inter alia that the large proportion of children places an enormous burden of dependence on the economically active part of the Black population, and this in turn means that Blacks will find it very difficult to raise their general standard of living.

- The number of Black pupils (independent states included) is expected to be just over 7 million by the end of the century. No decrease in the number of Black pupils is envisaged for the present century, with the result that there will be enormous pressure on the education departments involved and on other institutions responsible for the education and training of Blacks, both in the near future and for a considerable time after that.

- There has been a markedly high increase in the number of Black secondary school pupils, particularly since 1975. This does not only result in a higher per capita expenditure per pupil, but inevitably has important implications for the provision of education and tertiary training.

- According to Smit (1981: 9), education spending presently constitutes approximately 15 % of the total government expenditure, but this will have to be increased to approximately 38 % if the ideal of parity with Whites in the provision of education were to be realized for all population groups. Even if the necessary funds were to be made available, there would not immediately be sufficient teachers. A solution to this problem will not be found easily.

(5) Further implications

Smit (1981: 9) also remarks on the fact that

- the population distribution within the borders of a country or region has far-reaching socio-economic and political implications;
- deliberate strategies aimed at influencing population redistribution have largely failed up till now, both in capitalist and communist countries;
- the population of South Africa shows a growing tendency towards redistribution or mobility, and
- this redistribution has to be considered thoroughly, inter alia in the determination of the size and location of schools, sports facilities and other educational institutions.

CHAPTER 2

POPULATION SHIFTS AND THE EFFECT OF ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT ON INTERNAL MIGRATION

2.1 POPULATION SHIFTS

2.1.1 Immigration and emigration

Population shifts may occur across the borders of countries or internally.

Despite the fact that citizens of the RSA emigrate annually to Western countries, the Republic of South Africa also receives a constant stream of immigrants from other countries. Many of these immigrants are employed on a contract basis by big companies in order to supplement the insufficient number of trained artisans and other specialists in the country. People who wish to emigrate from other African states and overseas countries such as Zimbabwe, South West Africa (Namibia) and Poland and who come to the Republic of South Africa as voluntary immigrants must however comply with certain immigrational requirements.

The flow of immigrants to the Republic of South Africa decreased dramatically during the 1970s, probably as a result of the poor publicity that the country's government policy received abroad. The number of immigrants gradually increased again during the eighties, often owing to the fact that political unrest had occurred in their countries of origin. For the purpose of this report migration from foreign countries is not taken into account further on for two reasons: the influx of immigrants may be only of a temporary nature and immigration occurs very erratically.

The labour market of the Republic of South Africa accommodates a large number of Black contract workers from neighbouring states to work on the mines, in the agricultural sector and in various industries. In many analyses such workers are classified as "foreign Blacks" and not as immigrants. When discussing Black education, such Blacks are usually disregarded, particularly because they are mostly adult males. Sometimes their numbers cannot be ignored, mainly because such numbers are not always specified separately.

2.1.2 Internal migration

Whereas immigration from abroad only has a slight effect on the total number of pupils at school, this is not the case with internal migration. Internal or interior migration leads to a regrouping of pupils in particular regions or areas. This redistribution concerns all the population groups and, from time to time and even for short periods, results in extremely difficult problems with regard to the provision of essential and urgent educational facilities in the regions or areas involved. Such educational facilities include *inter alia* classrooms, furniture, other provisions, teachers and even the building of schools.

(1) Factors that constitute the basis of internal migration and the way in which they could affect education

As far as population shifts are concerned, land consolidation necessarily has an effect both on the White area and on the self-governing national and independent states. The same goes for the resettlement of specific Black and other communities. When any form of land consolidation and resettlement is at issue, educational authorities in particular have to be informed well in advance since the extent of such shifts and the numbers of pupils involved could be quite large. A definite influence must therefore inevitably be exerted *firstly* on the Black population as a whole (Black education included) and *secondly* on the provision of education and other services for the other population groups. The provision of an effective infrastructure as well as of sufficient and suitable housing and educational facilities in the areas involved demands urgent attention and planning.

The areas mentioned below are typical examples of such population shifts in which various Black population groups have been or still are very closely involved:

- Onverwacht, near Thaba Nchu, where resettlement is at issue.
- Montsi, near Groblersdal, where Blacks came from Lebowa.
- Whittlesea, near Queenstown, where Blacks in the Transkei moved to areas in the Ciskei.

- Crossroads, near Cape Town, where for various reasons squatters assemble in huge numbers.

- The Winterveld in Bophuthatswana, which actually has squatter problems.

- Duncan Village and Mdantsane, near East London.

- Secunda and Langverwacht, near Standerton, where huge industrial developments are taking place.

In addition there are still other shifts that are pending and that have been delayed for years without any actual progress being made or finality being reached about the matter. Alexandra, a Black township near Johannesburg and certain areas near Queenstown are also examples of such population shifts.

In Smit and Kok's publications Bevolkingsverskuiwings (1981) and Bevolkingsherverspreiding in die RSA, 1970-1980 (1981) the emphasis is on internal population shifts. The former of the two documents was specifically prepared in January 1981 as a working paper of the Work committee: Demography, Education and Manpower in the HSRC Investigation into Education, whereas the document that was compiled during the second week of October 1981 is more comprehensive and contains analyses of the provisional 1980 census data.

According to both these documents internal population shifts have far-reaching implications for education and the authors are doubtful whether the educational planners and administrators concerned gave enough attention to internal migration in the planning and provision of educational facilities in the past. In some parts of the country an exodus of Whites occurred, particularly from the countryside to the large urban areas. This has resulted in numerous classrooms and even entire school buildings being left either completely empty or partially occupied in the present situation.

Smit and Kok (January 1981: 1) state the following in this regard:

"Population shifts were not adequately taken into account in the past in determining the location and size of schools for example. Even greater mobility will in future be established by socio-economic forces, by the greater mobility allowed to urban Blacks for moving between the areas of different administration boards without forfeiting Article 10 rights, the slackening of influx control measures, the phasing out of job reservation, etc. Population shifts should therefore be thoroughly taken into account in the future planning of educational facilities." (Translation.)

The fact that there were not always adequate and regular liaison and co-ordination among all the parties or institutions concerned could be seen as a possible reason why something went wrong with population shifts, irrespective of their form, or gave rise to large-scale discontent or embarrassment. Each case is apparently treated on an ad hoc basis.

There is a serious need for an effective standing committee to control population shifts such as the resettlement of specific population groups, the depopulation of the rural areas, the interurban and intra-urban migration in the large metropolitan areas, and squatting. Such a committee has to represent all the institutions concerned and anticipate population redistribution trends according to fixed principles, plan the course of the shift and make recommendations with regard to possible strategies for the regulation and control of such redistributions.

(2) Latest available statistics regarding internal migration for 1970 and 1980

Despite the fact that the official statistics of the 1980 census were not yet available to Smit and Kok, they managed to obtain provisional figures for the various population groups in the different magisterial districts. By drawing a comparison between these data and the figures of the 1970 census, they managed to determine the increase or decrease in the numbers of the four population groups for each magisterial district between 1970 and 1980.

Smit and Kok stress two important features of the shift pattern:

- a shift towards the north and northeast of the country, and

- a growing concentration of Whites in the large metropolitan areas.

Considerably larger increases in population numbers were found in the Transvaal and Natal than in specific parts of the Orange Free State and the Cape Province (compare with Paragraph 1.3.3 (2) of Chapter 1).

The Perloff Shift Technique was used in order to compare the relative increases or decreases in population numbers based on magisterial districts. This technique is based on a comparison between the population growth or decrease in each magisterial district and the average population growth in the country as a whole. In absolute terms it is therefore possible to have an actual increase in the population of a magisterial district, but if the increase does not correspond with the average increase for the country as a whole, such a district in fact shows a relative decrease compared with the country as a whole. Smit and Kok (January 1981: 4) mention the example of Johannesburg where an absolute increase of 8 638 persons was recorded between 1970 and 1980, despite the fact that a relative population decrease was recorded because the proportional population growth in the city was lower than the average growth for the country as a whole.

Table 2.1 was taken from the works of Smit and Kok (January 1981: 3 and October 1981: 16) and it reflects the population group and the number of magisterial districts in each province that showed absolute increases in the population figure between 1970 and 1980, as well as the number of magisterial districts that showed absolute decreases in the population figure during the corresponding period. The table indicates that increases occurred in 202 cases, whereas decreases occurred in 114. Particularly in the case of three of the population groups (Blacks, Coloureds and Asians) the absolute increases represent the marked population growth that occurred and which can be attributed mainly to the fact that the population increases in magisterial districts exceeds the decreases. However the population decreases for Whites are bigger than their increases. The only exception for Whites was the Transvaal, where 50 magisterial districts reported increases, in contrast with 34 reporting decreases. In the case of the Coloured population, increases were reported in each of the four provinces. The number of Asians decreased slightly in Natal, but strongly increased in the Cape Province and the Transvaal. The number of Blacks decreased only in the Cape Province and this could be ascribed to the gaining of independence of Transkei and Bophuthatswana, since they are, respectively, completely and partly situated in the Cape Province. Despite the fact that Venda became independent and part of Bophuthatswana falls within Transvaal territory, Blacks in this province nevertheless showed a large increase.

TABLE 2.1

NUMBER OF MAGISTERIAL DISTRICTS WITH ABSOLUTE INCREASES AND DECREASES IN THE POPULATION BETWEEN 1970 AND 1980 PER POPULATION GROUP

Province	Category	Number of districts				
		Whites	Coloureds	Asians	Blacks	Total
Cape Province	Increases	29	77	51	48	61
	Decreases	89	40	27	70	57
Natal	Increases	29	36	27	43	47
	Decreases	35	27	31	21	17
Transvaal	Increases	50	68	44	62	65
	Decreases	34	14	30	22	19
Orange Free State	Increases	12	38		32	29
	Decreases	38	12		18	21
TOTAL	Increases	120	219	122	185	202
	Decreases	196	93	88	131	114

Sources:
- Smit and Kok (January 1981, Table 2, p.3).
- Smit and Kok (October 1981, Table 5, p.16).

(3) Comments on the HSRC's 1981 statistics on internal migration

Table 2.2 (Total growth within the self-governing national states: 1970-1980) was also adopted from Smit and Kok (January 1981: 4, and October 1981: 12) and reveals a very interesting feature of population shifts in the self-governing national states for the period 1970 to 1980. Smit and Kok (October, 1981: 11) remarked on this matter as follows:

> "Border changes ..., consolidation, resettlement and the possibility of an undercount in 1970 are responsible for the fact that the national states experienced abnormally high population increases between 1970 and 1980. In contrast with an average increase of 29,5 % in the total Black population, the national states experienced an average increase of 65,8 % during the period between the two censuses involved. Striking examples in this regard are Qwaqwa (512,1 %), KwaNdebele (412,0 %) and KaNgwane (201,5 %)." (Translation.)

Smit and Kok (October 1981: 2-3) state that, when interpreting the data in Table 2.2, it should be borne in mind that

- the data are provisional and available per population group only for the total population;

- land consolidation in national states and resettlement in particular have a definite effect on the Black population, and

TABLE 2.2

TOTAL POPULATION GROWTH IN PERCENTAGES IN THE SELF-GOVERNING NATIONAL STATES: 1970-1980

State	Whites	Coloureds	Asians	Blacks	Total
Ciskei	-55,06 %	-21,20 %	-57,14 %	76,44 %	73,82 %
KwaZulu	-53,25 %	-14,30 %	-21,18 %	52,72 %	52,11 %
Gazankulu	60,54 %	402,04 %	-75,00 %	71,72 %	71,76 %
Lebowa	-38,36 %	110,08 %	-27,91 %	60,83 %	60,34 %
Qwaqwa	40,82 %	*	*	514,51 %	512,08 %
KaNgwane	-81,22 %	570,00 %	*	204,12 %	201,56 %
KwaNdebele	-74,47 %	20,00 %	140,00 %	414,96 %	412,03 %
Total	-44,69 %	-11,34 %	-21,20 %	66,57 %	65,80 %

* No population: 1970.

Sources . Smit and Kok(January 1981, Table 3, p.4).

. Smit and Kok(October 1981, Table 4, p.12).

- Transkei, Bophuthatswana and Venda are excluded.

Smit and Kok also agree with the warning expressed by the Unit for Futures Research of the University of Stellenbosch (1980) when stating that "... market researchers and planners should be extremely careful when attempting to draw a comparison between the 1970 and 1980 census results, ... owing to the population shift and the adaptation of political and administrative borders which in some cases resulted in artificially high growth rates". (Translation.)

(4) Summative comment on internal migration

The discussion of population shifts as reflected in the works of Smit and Kok mentioned above (January and October 1981) is concluded below by means of a summary and commentary.

As far as gains and losses in the shifts of the total population are concerned, the Southern African population moved in a northern and northeastern direction during the decade until 1980. The ten magisterial districts that showed the relatively fastest growth were in order of importance:

Mdutjana, Witsieshoek, Kempton Park, Madadeni, Wynberg, Eerstehoek, Embumbulu, Vanderbijlpark, Mdantsane, Sekhukuneland.

The magisterial districts that showed the relatively largest loss in population shift were in order of importance:

Durban, Johannesburg, Cape Town, East London, Krugersdorp, Pilgrim's Rest and Pretoria.

With regard to the White population absolute decreases were recorded in 196 and increases in 120 magisterial districts. Large decreases occurred in 89 magisterial districts in the Cape Province and in 38 in the Orange Free State. The Pretoria-Witwatersrand-Vaal triangle area and the southwestern Cape absorbed more than 53 % of all gains in population shift despite the fact that these areas constitute only 2 % of the total area of the country. Depopulation of the countryside is continuing, particularly in the central Karoo, Southern Free State, Northern Transvaal and northwestern Transvaal. The highest relative gains in population shift occurred in the following ten magisterial districts: Kempton Park, Bellville, Alberton, Pinetown, Randburg, Boksburg, Pretoria, Newcastle, Hoëveldrif and Roodepoort. In eight magisterial districts, namely the districts of Johannesburg, Durban, Port Elizabeth, East London, Cape Town, Krugersdorp, Germiston and Westonaria, the number of Whites increased relatively slowly. Whites are also gradually moving from the central business to the peripheral areas of the cities. Considerable intercity migration occurs in Johannesburg and Cape Town. The population of the older residential areas within the greater urban areas is steadily ageing, while the number of school-going children in these areas is rapidly decreasing. In the future these factors will have to be thoroughly taken into account in the planning of educational facilities for Whites.

In terms of absolute figures, the Coloured population decreased in 40 magisterial districts in the Cape Province, especially in parts of the Karoo and in the northwestern Cape. The largest in-migration of Coloureds occurred in the southwestern Cape in Wynberg, Kuils River and Bellville. Absolute increases also occurred in 68 magisterial districts in the Transvaal, 38 in the Orange Free State and 36 in Natal. The largest relative increases were in the magisterial districts of Wynberg, Kuils River, Bellville, Kimberley, Inanda, Alberton, Malmesbury, Uitenhage, Vredenburg and Randfontein. Those with the largest relative decreases were Cape Town, Durban, Port Elizabeth, Graaff-Reinet, Beaufort West, Calvinia, Stellenbosch, Germiston, Riversdal and Krugersdorp. These shifts have an effect on the provision of educational facilities for Coloureds in particular and educational planners should be forewarned and keep themselves informed of such factors.

Regarding the Asian population absolute increases were found in 122 magisterial districts and absolute decreases in 88. The three magisterial districts, Inanda, Pinetown and Pietermaritzburg, absorbed more than 80 % of the relative increases in the number of Asians. Other magisterial districts with relatively big increases are Benoni, Johannesburg and

Empumalanga, while relative decreases occurred in the magisterial districts of Durban, Lower Tugela, Vulindlela, Kwa-Mapumulu and Umzinto. These shifts which occurred predominantly in Natal and the Transvaal will undoubtedly have an effect on the provision of educational facilities for Asians in the areas concerned.

With regard to the Black population the self-governing national states experienced enormous and rapid increases in their number of Black residents. Absolute increases occurred in 185 and absolute decreases in 131 magisterial districts. The magisterial districts with the largest relative increases were Mdutjana, Witsieshoek, Madadeni, Eerstehoek, Kempton Park, Umbumbulu, Vanderbijlpark, Mdantsane, Sekhukhuneland and Zwelitsha.

Magisterial districts that recorded relatively large decreases in Black population figures were Durban, East London, Krugersdorp, Pilgrim's Rest, Middelburg (Tvl), Bloemfontein, Pretoria, Vryheid, Soutpansberg and Randburg. To date resettlement schemes and programmes, the planning of urban residential areas and land consolidation have had a huge effect on the gains and losses in Black population shifts. In many cases dissatisfactory resettlement schemes have been dragging on for years causing frustration: housing, education and other facilities are either promised, provided partially, not extended or improved, or not provided at all. With regard to the future, it can be assumed that similar poor living conditions may still occur, but then only in very exceptional cases. However the declared policy should rather be to avoid such conditions. It is the task of the authorities concerned to attend to such matters in time so that large-scale housing and education projects for existing and new Black residential areas can be planned, developed and implemented in time. The elimination of backlogs in this respect should be considered as a high priority that demands speedy action.

2.2 THE EFFECT OF ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT ON INTERNAL MIGRATION

2.2.1 Significance of economic development

A factor that has until recently not been emphasized strongly enough and that has a definite influence on internal migration in particular is the economic development of certain regions of a country. This is particularly evident in the case of an outstretched country such as Southern Africa where the most important economic activities are concentrated in a small number of metropolitan areas. The population flocks to these areas while other regions, the most important of which being the countryside, become depopulated at a relatively fast rate.

Throughout the world economic development is characterized by the concentration of most forms of economic activity in a few metropolitan areas and by a relative slowness in the development of the rest of the country. Such an uneven distribution of economic and other activities may cause serious problems for the central as well the decentralized authorities. Since this situation already

78

exists in Southern Africa, the present (1984) authorities in Southern Africa who are responsible for the four different population groups living in four provinces, six self-governing national and four independent states, are faced with enormous problems.

2.2.2 Latest regional development strategy for Southern Africa

According to the Information Newsletter (The Promotion of Industrial Development: An element of a co-ordinated regional development strategy in Southern Africa) that was issued and distributed by the Department of Foreign Affairs and Information as an appendix to the SA Digest of 2 April 1982, the question of industrial development within the Southern African region can be approached effectively only if all development processes concerned are rationalized by means of close co-operation between all parties or institutions involved. This quest for co-operation "... entails, *inter alia* the elimination of duplicate structures, the harmonisation of development policies, and the mutual development and utilisation of basic infrastructure, which in turn requires the formulation of the coherent development strategy for the region as a whole." (Department of Foreign Affairs and Information, 1981: Paragraph A.1).

In view of the above the different states in Southern Africa conducted a series of talks during 1981 and from these it appeared that the development of less developed areas should be promoted on a regional basis. Southern Africa should be divided into a number of broadly defined development regions according to development needs, development potential, functional relationships and physical features. Such a development strategy should be aimed at cultivating the potential for development of every region with its particular population group(s), e.g. its agricultural, mining, services and industrial potential.

Close co-operation on a regional basis will also be required between the different states and authorities. Education and training can be expected to constitute one of the main components of the service potential of every region, in other words the development of education in every development area will be an essential facet of co-operation of this kind.

2.2.3 Demarcation of broad development regions (see Map 2.1)

During the talks that were mentioned earlier, agreement was reached on the following broad development regions for the planning of regional development:

A. Western Cape

B. Northern Cape/Western Transvaal/Bophuthatswana

C. Orange Free State/Qwaqwa/the Thaba Nchu district of Bophuthatswana

D. Eastern Cape/Ciskei/the southern part of Transkei

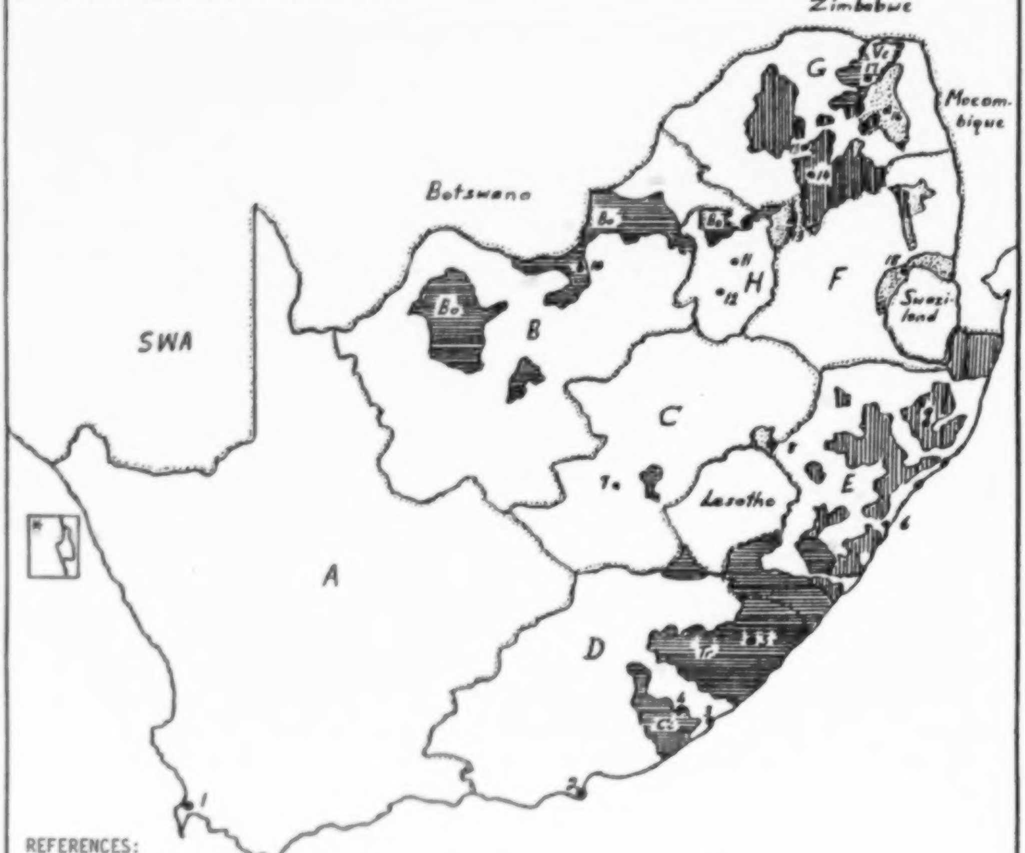
E. Natal/KwaZulu/the northern part of Transkei

F. Eastern Transvaal/KaNgwane/parts of Lebowa and Gazankulu

G. Northern Transvaal/Venda/parts of Lebowa and Gazankulu

MAP 2.1

DEVELOPMENT REGIONS OF SOUTHERN AFRICA



REFERENCES:

* Inset: Walvis Bay (RSA).

Boundaries between development regions.

A: Western Cape
B: Northern Cape/Western Transvaal/Bophuthatswana
C: Orange Free State/Qwaqwa/ District of Thaba Nchu of Bophuthatswana
D: Eastern Cape/Ciskei/ Southern part of Transkei
E: Natal/KwaZulu/Northern part of Transkei
F: Eastern Transvaal/KwaNgwane/ parts of Lebowa and Gazankulu
G: Northern Transvaal/Venda/ parts of Lebowa and Gazankulu
H: PWV/KwaNdebele/part of Bophuthatswana

Tr: Transkei
Ci: Ciskei
Bo: Bophuthatswana
Ve: Venda

1: Cape Town (RSA)
2: Port Elizabeth (RSA)
3: East London (RSA)
4: Bisho (Ciskei)
5: Umtata (Transkei)
6: Durban (RSA)
7: Bloemfontein (RSA)
8: Phuthaditjhaba (Qwaqwa)
9: Ulundi (KwaZulu)
10: Mmabatho (Bophuthatswana)

11: Pretoria (RSA)
12: Johannesburg (RSA)
13: Siyabuswa (KwaNdebele)
14: Lebowakgomo (Lebowa)
15: Pietersburg (RSA)
16: Giyani (Gazankulu)
17: Thohoyandou (Venda)
18: Louieville (KaNgwane)

Source: Map: Independent and national states in Southern Africa. Development Bank of Southern Africa. Transo, Roodepoort, September 1984.

H. PWV/KwaNdebele/a part of Bophuthatswana

(Department of Foreign Affairs and Information, 1982: Paragraph A.2).

2.2.4 Criteria for classification of regions according to development priorities

The eight regions as mentioned in the previous paragraph were classified in terms of development priorities according to the three criteria below:

"- the need for employment creation as measured by the present rate of unemployment, the absolute number of unemployed, and the future need for employment estimated according to the number of adults and children who could probably enter the labour market during the next ten years;

- the need for a higher standard of living as measured by the present average income of the inhabitants of a region and its distribution amongst the inhabitants; and

- the potential of a development region to satisfy its own employment needs in the future through economic growth."

(Department of Foreign Affairs and Information, 1982: Paragraph A.2.)

2.2.5 Order of importance of development regions

The above criteria were applied to determine the particular order of importance (as indicated below) for the different development regions (Department of Foreign Affairs and Information, 1982: Paragraph A.2):

Development region	Relative development need
D: Eastern Cape/Ciskei/Transkei (southern parts)	9
E: Natal/KwaZulu/Transkei (northern parts)	8
G: Northern Transvaal/Venda/parts of Lebowa and Gazankulu	8
A: Western Cape	6
B: Western Transvaal/Northern Cape/Bophuthatswana	6
C: OFS/Qwaqwa/Bophuthatswana (Thaba Nchu)	6
F: Eastern Transvaal/KaNgwane/parts of Lebowa and Gazankulu	6
H: PWV area/KwaNdebele/a part of Bophuthatswana	4

2.2.6 Comment on the proposed regional development plan

It should be accepted that all forms of the education and training of manpower at all levels will have to be involved in the proposed regional development planning of each of the eight regions mentioned and that all education departments will have to give careful consideration to this matter. In addition it should be noted that all four the independent states (Transkei, Bophuthatswana, Venda and Ciskei*), all six the self-governing national states (KwaZulu, Qwaqwa, KaNgwane, Gazankulu, Lebowa and KwaNdebele), all four provinces of the Republic of South Africa (the Transvaal, Natal, Orange Free State and Cape Province) and all state departments of the Republic of South Africa will be involved in this regional development strategy for Southern Africa, and all four population groups will consequently be included. The role of the private sector in the entire affair should be taken into account.

Each of the eight development regions will obviously affect the internal migration of the respective population groups to and/or within the regions concerned in proportion to the extent to which they develop and expand during the next decade. These regions will probably be much larger than they have been so far. Planning and implementing the development programmes for each of these regions will not only have an effect on education and on the trends that have influenced education during recent years, but might also change them dramatically. Existing projections, irrespective of their form, will have to be dealt with extremely carefully and discreetly in view of the future development referred to, before specific (educational and training) facets of planning (with special reference to education and training) can be realized. The application of certain projections will not be possible any longer.

---

* Ciskei was already an independent state at that stage and no longer a self-governing national state.

2.2.7 The Vaal Triangle as a strategic industrial centre

By taking one part of the eight development regions mentioned as an example, it should be possible to give the reader an impression of the effect that each of these regions may have on the development of and in South Africa. In the quotation below reference is made to the Vaal Triangle within the PWV area only.

On page 34 of the March 1983 edition of Tegniek, a business journal for Southern Africa, the following statements are made:

"The Vaal Triangle has already developed into the most strategic industrial centre in South Africa and it may in time grow to become the largest industrial centre in the country in terms of production." (Translation)

The information below provides irrefutable proof of the potential of this region:

- According to the 1980 census the total population of the Vaal Triangle was 558 455: 391 694 Blacks and 166 761 Whites. The latter group constitutes 3,8 % of the total White population of the RSA.

- During 1980 62 893 Whites were employed in all facets of the economy in the Vaal Triangle. Of these 69,5 % were skilled, 29 % semiskilled and 1,5 % unskilled.

- In 1980 approximately 26,9 % of the 391 694 Blacks living in the Vaal Triangle were economically active. By 1990 this Black population will have increased by almost 80 % and the additional provision of close to 82 000 living units and school facilities for approximately 140 000 pupils will be essential.

- The 26,9 % mentioned above represents more than 105 000 Blacks (excluding domestic servants and garden workers) who were economically active in this region during 1980. Five comma nine per cent of this group of workers were skilled, 39,8 % semiskilled and 54,3 % unskilled. It is estimated that another 82 000 Blacks will have entered the labour market of this region by 1990.

- The Vaal Triangle presently plays a large role in the field of technical and other training. In view of this, as well as the huge developments that are envisaged and the shortages that exist, there is an urgent need for fast, practical and effective training and retraining of staff members in the future.

CHAPTER 3

OVERALL POPULATION GROWTH AND NATURAL POPULATION GROWTH ACCORDING TO AGE

3.1 AGE DISTRIBUTION AND OVERALL POPULATION GROWTH

3.1.1 The importance of age distribution of the population with a view to planning

The age composition of a population or population group is unmistakably related to the future increase of the population's figures, the economic development, the making available of social services and development in general.

To determine the age structure of the four different main population groups of Southern Africa and at the same time to establish the number of children who are of school age and the number of economically active persons per population group, it is necessary first to study the available statistics regarding the age distribution of each of the population groups involved.

It is generally known that

- both the low (under 20 years) and the high age groups of a population (over 64) exert increased pressure on the economically productive group, since they depend largely on this middle group, particularly for financial help and moral support;

- a positively active economy -

87

- leads to a decrease in the population growth;

- causes an increase in the general standard of living and welfare of the population;

- even causes a large increase in the number of women entering the labour market, and that

. birth and growth rates of a population are decreased by -

- progress in the educational field,

- the expansion of communication media in different forms,

- rapid industrial development, and

- concomitant urbanization of the economically active groups.

3.1.2 Age distribution of the total population of Southern Africa for 1960, 1970 and 1980

The age distribution of the total population of Southern Africa for 1960, 1970 and 1980 is reflected in the following tables:

Table 3.1 (Southern Africa)
Table 3.2 (White area)
Table 3.3 (Total Black population of Southern Africa).

TABLE 3.1

AGE DISTRIBUTION OF TOTAL POPULATION IN SOUTHERN AFRICA FOR 1960, 1970 AND 1980

			Total population	<1 year	0-4 years	5-9 years	10-14 years	15-19 years	5-19 years	20-64 years	65+ years
Total population	1960	Number	15 978 108	471 687	2 389 974	2 171 694	1 841 839	1 506 867	5 520 400	7 448 684	620 050
		%	100,00	2,95	14,96	13,59	11,53	9,43	34,55	46,62	3,87
	1970	Number	21 278 285	700 381	3 251 893	3 049 589	2 736 781	2 182 760	7 969 130	9 198 746	858 516
		%	100,00	3,29	15,28	14,33	12,86	10,26	37,45	43,23	4,04
	1980	Number	28 848 470	824 263	4 149 744	3 793 147	3 372 021	3 039 177	10 204 345	13 329 267	1 165 114
		%	100,00	2,86	14,39	13,15	11,69	10,53	35,37	46,20	4,04
Whites	1960	Number	3 078 314	70 689	352 682	328 088	315 002	272 129	915 219	1 602 400	208 013
		%	100,00	2,30	11,46	10,66	10,23	8,84	29,73	52,05	6,76
	1970	Number	3 773 282	85 576	410 020	392 643	380 201	341 839	1 114 683	1 999 358	249 221
		%	100,00	2,27	10,87	10,41	10,08	9,06	29,55	52,99	6,59
	1980	Number	4 528 100	72 400	391 760	429 500	425 460	405 960	1 260 920	2 519 160	356 260
		%	100,00	1,60	8,65	9,49	9,40	8,97	27,86	55,63	7,86
Coloureds	1960	Number	1 506 798	58 270	270 348	226 294	183 924	143 728	553 946	634 657	47 847
		%	100,00	3,87	17,94	15,02	12,20	9,54	36,76	42,12	3,18
	1970	Number	2 050 699	70 328	346 508	324 795	275 907	218 256	818 958	822 150	63 083
		%	100,00	3,43	16,90	15,84	13,45	10,64	39,93	40,09	3,08
	1980	Number	2 612 780	63 120	331 540	344 740	345 760	320 420	1 010 920	1 185 880	84 440
		%	100,00	2,42	12,69	13,20	13,23	12,26	38,69	45,39	3,23

TABLE 3.1 (cont.)

			Total population	<1 year	0-4 years	5-9 years	10-14 years	15-19 years	5-19 years	20-64 years	65+ years
Asians	1960	Number	477 471	15 142	73 994	72 232	66 887	55 892	195 011	200 407	8 059
		%	100,00	3,17	15,50	15,13	14,00	11,71	40,84	41,98	1,68
	1970	Number	630 372	19 407	92 179	87 535	80 320	73 698	241 553	285 362	11 278
		%	100,00	3,08	14,62	13,89	12,74	11,69	38,32	45,27	1,79
	1980	Number	821 320	18 720	102 900	109 820	92 360	86 120	288 300	410 000	20 120
		%	100,00	2,40	12,53	13,37	11,25	10,49	35,11	49,91	2,45
Blacks	1960	Number	10 915 525	327 586	1 692 950	1 545 080	1 276 026	1 035 118	3 856 224	5 011 220	356 131
		%	100,00	3,00	15,51	14,15	11,69	9,48	35,32	45,91	3,26
	1970	Number	14 823 932	525 070	2 403 186	2 244 616	2 000 353	1 548 967	5 793 936	6 091 876	534 934
		%	100,00	3,54	16,21	15,14	13,49	10,45	39,08	41,10	3,61
	1980	Number	20 886 270	669 023	3 323 544	2 909 087	2 508 441	2 226 677	7 644 205	9 214 227	704 294
		%	100,00	3,20	15,91	13,93	12,01	10,66	36,60	44,12	3,37

Sources:
- Bureau for Statistics (February 1968, pp. 27, 167, 294, 393).
- Department of Statistics (1980, p.1.22-1.24).

  NOTE: Foreign Blacks have been excluded.
- Central Statistical Services (1982, pp. 1.18-1.20).
- BENSO (November 1982, Table 9).

TABLE 3.2

AGE DISTRIBUTION OF TOTAL POPULATION IN WHITE AREA FOR 1960, 1970 AND 1980

	Total population	<1 year	0-4 years	5-9 years	10-14 years	15-19 years	5-19 years	20-64 years	65+ years
Total population									
1960 Number	15 978 108	471 667	2 389 974	2 171 694	1 841 839	1 506 867	5 520 400	7 448 684	620 050
%	100,00	2,95	14,96	13,59	11,53	9,43	34,55	46,62	3,87
1970 Number	14 172 122	429 434	2 018 301	1 845 220	1 645 203	1 445 047	4 935 470	6 686 830	531 521
%	100,00	3,03	14,24	13,02	11,61	10,20	34,83	47,18	3,75
1980 Number	18 083 620	414 920	2 167 160	2 040 600	1 836 080	1 832 460	5 709 140	9 480 120	727 200
%	100,00	2,30	11,99	11,29	10,15	10,13	31,57	52,42	4,02
Whites									
1960 Number	3 078 314	70 689	352 682	328 088	315 002	272 129	915 219	1 602 400	208 013
%	100,00	2,30	11,46	10,66	10,23	8,84	29,73	52,05	6,76
1970 Number	3 773 282	85 576	410 020	392 643	380 201	341 839	1 114 683	1 999 358	249 221
%	100,00	2,27	10,87	10,41	10,08	9,06	29,55	52,99	6,59
1980 Number	4 528 100	72 400	391 760	429 500	425 460	405 960	1 260 920	2 519 160	356 260
%	100,00	1,60	8,65	9,49	9,40	8,97	27,86	55,63	7,86
Coloureds									
1960 Number	1 506 798	58 270	270 348	226 294	183 924	143 728	553 946	634 657	47 847
%	100,00	3,87	17,94	15,02	12,20	9,54	36,76	42,12	3,18
1970 Number	2 050 699	70 328	346 508	324 795	275 907	218 256	818 958	822 150	63 083
%	100,00	3,43	16,90	15,84	13,45	10,64	39,93	40,09	3,08
1980 Number	2 612 780	63 120	331 540	344 740	345 760	320 420	1 010 920	1 185 880	84 440
%	100,00	2,42	12,69	13,20	13,23	12,26	38 69	45,39	3,23

TABLE 3.2 (cont.)

	Total population	<1 year	0-4 years	5-9 years	10-14 years	15-19 years	5-19 years	20-64 years	65+ years
Asians									
1960 Number	477 471	15 142	73 994	72 232	66 887	55 892	195 011	200 407	8 059
%	100,00	3,17	15,50	15,13	14,00	11,71	40,84	41,98	1,68
1970 Number	630 372	19 407	92 179	87 535	80 320	73 698	241 553	285 362	11 278
%	100,00	3,08	14,62	13,89	12,74	11,69	38,32	45,27	1,79
1980 Number	821 320	19 720	102 900	109 820	92 360	86 120	288 300	410 000	20,120
%	100,00	2,40	12,53	13,37	11,25	10,49	35,11	49,91	2,45
Blacks									
1960 Number	10 915 525	327 586	1 692 950	1 545 080	1 276 026	1 035 118	3 856 224	5 011 220	356 131
%	100,00	3,00	15,51	14,15	11,69	9,48	35,32	45,91	3,26
1970 Number	7 717 769	254 123	1 169 594	1 040 247	908 775	811 254	2 760 276	3 579 960	207 939
%	100,00	3,29	15,15	13,48	11,78	10,51	35,77	46,39	2,69
1980 Number	10 121 420	259 680	1 340 960	1 156 540	972 500	1 019 960	3 149 000	5 365 080	266 380
%	100,00	2,57	13,25	11,43	9,61	10,08	31,12	53,00	2,63

Sources:
- Bureau for Statistics (February 1968, pp. 27, 167, 294, 393).
- Department of Statistics (1980, p.1.22-1.24).
  NOTE: Foreign Blacks have been excluded (516 043 Blacks).
- Central Statistical Services (1982, pp.1.18-1.20).
- BENSO (November 1982, Table 9).

TABLE 3.3
AGE DISTRIBUTION OF TOTAL BLACK POPULATION IN SOUTHERN AFRICA FOR 1960, 1970 AND 1980

			Total population	< 1 year	0-4 years	5-9 years	10-14 years	15-19 years	5-19 years	20-64 years	65+ years
Total population											
	1960	Number	10 915 525	327 586	1 692 950	1 545 080	1 276 026	1 035 118	3 856 224	5 011 220	356 131
		%	100,00	3,00	15,51	14,15	11,69	9,48	35,32	45,91	3,26
	1970	Number	14 823 932	525 070	2 403 186	2 244 616	2 000 353	1 548 967	5 793 936	6 091 876	534 934
		%	100,0	3,54	16,21	15,14	13,49	10,45	39,08	41,10	3,61
	1980	Number	20 886 270	669 023	3 323 544	2 909 087	2 508 441	2 226 677	7 644 205	9 214 227	704 294
		%	100,00	3,20	15,91	13,93	12,01	10,66	36,60	44,12	3,37
White area											
	1960	Number	10 915 525	327 586	1 642 950	1 545 080	1 276 026	1 035 118	3 856 224	5 011 220	356 131
		%	100,00	3,00	15,51	14,15	11,69	9,48	35,32	45,91	3,26
	1970	Number	7 717 769	254 123	1 169 594	1 040 247	908 775	811 254	2 760 276	3 579 960	207 939
		%	100,00	3,29	15,15	13,48	11,78	10,51	35,77	46,39	2,69
	1980	Number	10 121 420	259 680	1 340 960	1 156 540	972 500	1 019 960	3 149 000	5 365 080	266 380
		%	100,00	2,57	13,25	11,43	9,61	10,08	31,12	53,00	2,63
Self-governing states											
	1960	Number									
		%									
	1970	Number	7 106 163	270 947	1 233 592	1 204 369	1 091 578	737 713	3 033 660	2 511 916	326 995
		%	100,00	3,81	17,36	16,95	15,36	10,38	42,69	35,35	4,60
	1980	Number	6 802 340	252 460	1 302 680	1 103 980	932 940	782 580	2 819 500	2 432 100	248 060
		%	100,00	3,71	19,15	16,23	13,71	11,50	41,44	35,76	3,65

TABLE 3.3 (cont.)

	Total population	<1 year	0-4 years	5-9 years	10-14 years	15-19 years	5-19 years	20-64 years	65+ years
Independent states									
1960 Number									
%									
1970 Number									
%									
1980 Number	3 962 510	156 883	679 904	648 567	603 001	424 137	1 675 705	1 417 047	189 854
%	100,00	3,96	17,16	16,37	15,22	10,70	42,29	35,76	4,79

Sources:
- Bureau of Statistics (February 1968, pp. 27, 167, 294, 393).
- Department of Statistics (1980, p. 1.22-1.24).
  NOTE: Foreign Blacks have been excluded (516 043 Blacks).
- Central Statistical Services (1982, pp. 1.18-1.20).
- BENSO (November 1982, Table 9).

Figures for the age distribution among nine different columns are supplied for each of these subheadings: total population; younger than 1 year; 0 - 4 years; 5 - 9 years; 10 - 14 years; 15 - 19 years; 20 - 64 years and 65 + years.

3.1.3 Absolute growth of the total population of Southern Africa and in the White area per population group

Different diagrams were prepared from the information contained in Tables 3.1, 3.2 and 3.3 concerning the total population of Southern Africa and the White area respectively.

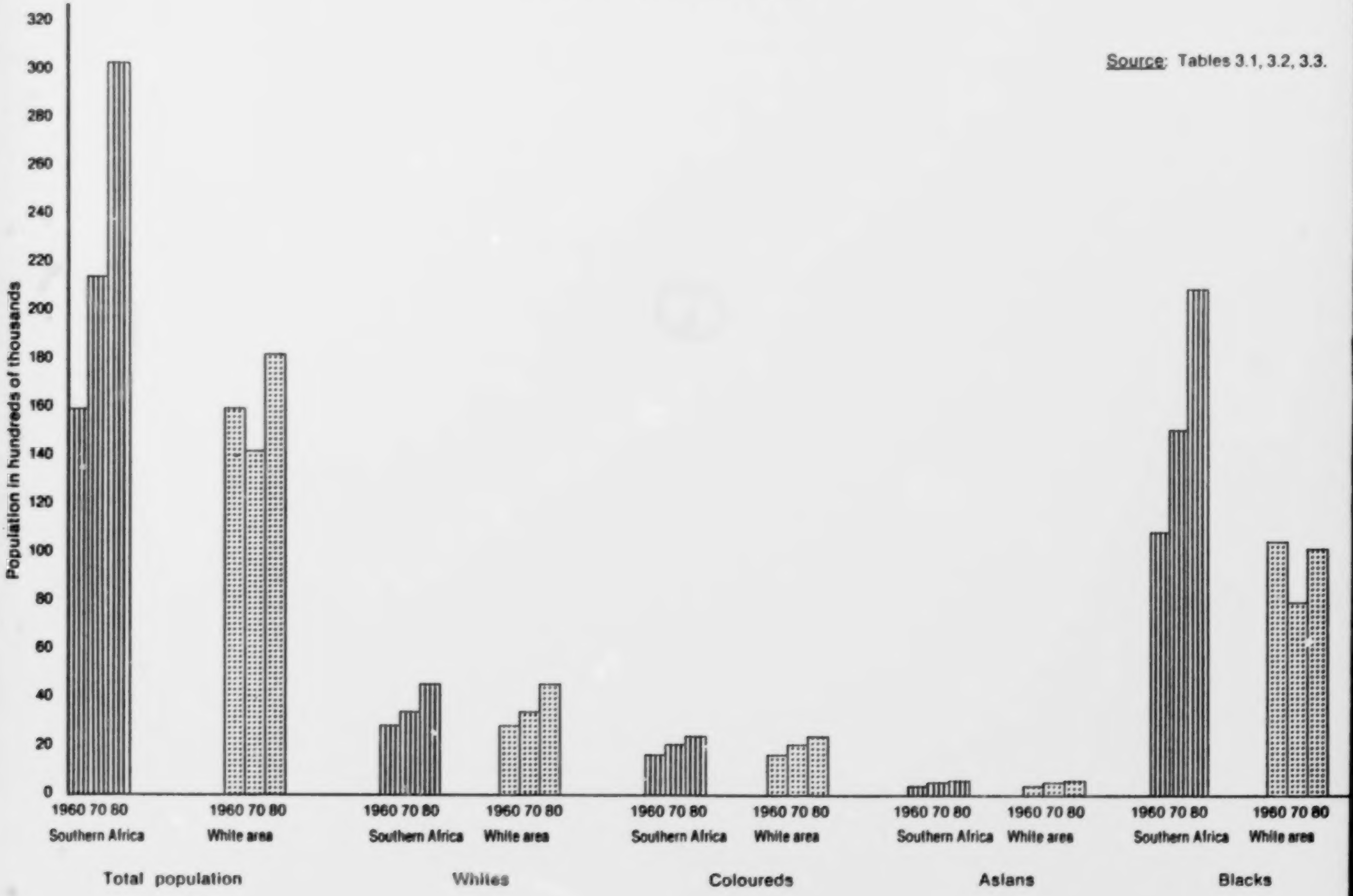
Diagram 3.1 was compiled to obtain a comparative picture of the increase in the population figures within the Southern African region as a whole and within the White area with regard to both the total population and the respective population groups, based on the data in the 1960, 1970 and 1980 censuses. The following is clear from this diagram:

The total population of Southern Africa increased from 15 978 108 to 28 848 470 between 1960 and 1980, i.e. an increase of 12 870 362 or 80,55 %. This implies a mean annual growth of 4,08 % over 20 years.

The White area of the Republic of South Africa showed a total population growth of 2 105 572 (from 15 978 108 to 18 083 620) or 13,18 %. Although the reason for this low growth can mainly be attributed to the gaining of independence by Transkei in 1976, Bophuthatswana in 1977 and Venda in 1979, it should also be partly

DIAGRAM 3.1

GROWTH IN NUMBERS OF TOTAL POPULATION AND INDIVIDUAL POPULATION GROUPS IN 1960, 1970 AND 1980 IN SOUTHERN AFRICA AND THE RSA



Source: Tables 3.1, 3.2, 3.3.

ascribed to the fact that certain areas became self-governing national states. This resulted in a large decrease in the total population figure in the White area as reflected by the data for 1970.

Almost identical diagrams were obtained for Whites, Coloureds and Asians in Southern Africa as a whole for the period from 1960 to 1980 and for Whites in the White area for the same period. This implies that these three population groups for all practical purposes stayed on in the White area and did not constitute a noteworthy part of the populations of the self-governing national and independent states.

The White population increased from 3 078 314 in 1960 to 4 528 100 in 1980, which is an increase of 1 449 785 or 47,10 % and points to a mean annual growth of 2,36 % over 20 years.

Coloureds increased from 1 506 798 by 1 105 982 to 2 612 780, in other words by 73,4 % over 20 years or by an average of 3,67 % per year.

The increase in the number of Asians was 343 849, i.e. 477 471 to 821 320 (or 72,02 %). This signifies a mean growth of 3,60 % per year over 20 years.

As far as Blacks are concerned it seems that their numbers increased from 10 915 525 to 20 886 270 between 1960 and 1980, i.e. by 9 970 745 or 91,35 %, which constitutes an annual mean of

4,57 % over 20 years. In 1970 7 717 769 Blacks lived in the White area and in 1980 this figure increased to 10 121 420. This points to an absolute increase of 2 403 651 (or 31,14 %). However, strictly speaking the latter comparison may not be drawn, because KwaZulu, KaNgwane and KwaNdebele only gained self-government between 1970 and 1980. (See also Table 1.10.)

In order to obtain an indication of the expected population figures in Southern Africa for 1990, the estimates below (based on the figures for 1960, 1970 and 1980) were made by means of rectilinear projections:

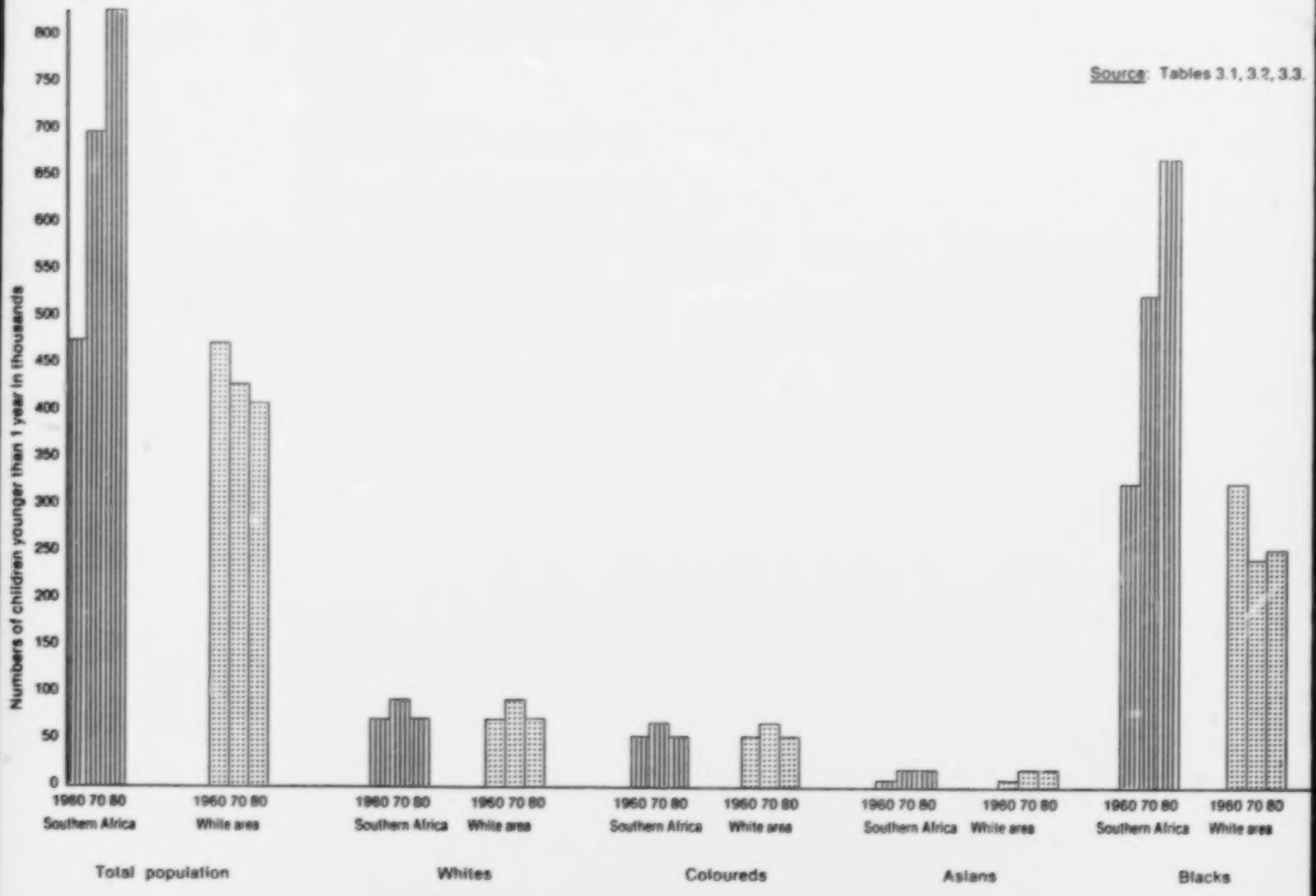
Whites	5,2 million
Coloureds	3,2 million
Asians	1,0 million
Blacks (total)	25,7 million
Total population	35,1 million

3.1.4 Increase in population figures for children under the age of one in Southern Africa and in the White area per population group

Diagram 3.2 represents the numbers of children who were under the age of one in 1960, 1970 and 1980 in Southern Africa as a whole and in the White area as they appear in Tables 3.1, 3.2 and 3.3.

Meaningful comparisons could not be drawn between the figures for 1960, 1970 and 1980, either for the total population or Black population in the White area, since considerable adjustments were made to the latter's borders as far as the three census years are

DIAGRAM 3.2
POPULATION: NUMBERS OF CHILDREN YOUNGER THAN 1 YEAR IN 1960, 1970 AND 1980 PER POPULATION GROUP FOR SOUTHERN AFRICA AND THE RSA



Source: Tables 3.1, 3.2, 3.3.

concerned. For example, a number of Black population groups were included in the populations of self-governing national states before and after 1970 and three independent states were established after 1976. (Ciskei gained independence only after the 1980 census.) Comparisons are possible only when the total Southern African region is taken into account.

As far as the total population of the Southern African region is concerned, a considerable increase of 48,48 % (or an average of 4,85 % a year) occurred in the number of children under the age of one during the decade 1960-1970. During the ten years from 1970 to 1980 the increase was smaller: 17,69 % (or an average of 1,77 % a year). The increase for the period from 1960 to 1980 was 74,75 % and this figure represents a mean annual increase of 3,74 % over 20 years.

Regarding the numbers of children under the age of one in the four population groups, the position is as follows (compare Table 3.4):

Whites: 1960-1970: 21,06 % increase (i.e. an average of 2,11 % a year)
1970-1980: 15,40 % decrease (i.e. an average of 1,54 % a year)
1960-1980: 2,42 % net increase (i.e. an average of 0,12 % a year), which is very low.

Coloureds: 1960-1970: 20,69 % increase (i.e. an average of 2,07 % a year)

TABLE 3.4

COMPARISON BETWEEN NUMBERS AND RELATIVE PERCENTAGES OF POPULATION GROWTH AND OF CHILDREN YOUNGER THAN ONE YEAR FOR TOTAL POPULATION AND 4 RESPECTIVE POPULATION GROUPS OF SOUTHERN AFRICA FOR 1960, 1970 AND 1980

	Period	Numbers		Percentage		Mean annually %	
		Increase	Decrease	Increase	Decrease	Increase	Decrease
Total population	1960-1970	5 300 177		33,17		3,32	
	1970-1980	7 570 185		35,58		3,56	
	1960-1980	12 870 362		80,55		4,03	
Children < 1 year	1960-1970	228 694		48,48		4,85	
	1970-1980	123 882		17,69		1,77	
	1960-1980	352 576		74,75		3,74	
Whites	1960-1970	694 968		22,58		2,26	
	1970-1980	754 818		20,00		2,00	
	1960-1980	1 449 786		47,10		2,36	
Children < 1 year	1960-1970	14 887		21,06		2,11	
	1970-1980		13 176		15,40		1,54
	1960-1980	1 711		2,42		0,12	
Coloureds	1960-1970	543 901		36,10		3,61	
	1970-1980	562 081		27,41		2,74	
	1960-1980	1 105 982		73,40		3,67	
Children < 1 year	1960-1970	12 058		20,69		2,07	
	1970-1980		7 208		10,25		1,03
	1960-1980	4 850		8,32		0,42	
Asians	1960-1970	152 901		32,02		3,20	
	1970-1980	190 948		30,29		3,03	
	1960-1980	343 849		72,02		3,60	
Children < 1 year	1960-1970	4 265		28,17		2,82	
	1970-1980	313		1,61		0,16	
	1960-1980	4 578		30,23		1,51	
Blacks	1960-1970	3 908 407		35,81		3,58	
	1970-1980	6 062 338		40,90		4,09	
	1960-1980	9 970 745		91,35		4,57	
Children< 1 year	1960-1970	197 484		60,29		6,03	
	1970-1980	143 953		27,42		2,74	
	1960-1980	341 437		104,23		5,21	

Sources: Tables 3.1, 3.2 and 3.3.

1970-1980: 10,25 % decrease (i.e. an average of 1,03 % a year)

1960-1980: 8,32 % net increase (i.e. an average of 0,42 % a year), which is very low.

Asians: 1960-1970: 28,17 % increase (i.e. an average of 2,82 % a year)

1970-1980: 1,61 % decrease (i.e. an average of 0,16 % a year)

1960-1980: 30,23 % net increase (i.e. an average of 1,51 % a year).

Blacks: 1960-1970: 60,29 % increase (i.e. an average of 6,03 % a year), which is very high

1970-1980: 27,42 % decrease (i.e. an average of 2,74 % a year)

1960-1980: 104,23 % net increase (i.e. an average of 5,21 % a year), which is very high.

If the net percentage increase of White children under the age of one is taken as 1, the ratio below is obtained for the net percentage increase of the four population groups:

Whites: Coloureds: Asians: Blacks:: 1: 3,4: 12,5 :43,1.

The increases (or decreases) in the numbers of White and Coloured children under the age of one from 1960 to 1970 and 1980 show the same pattern. The 1970 and 1980 figures for the Asian population group are almost identical. Despite the fact that the percentage increase for Black children under the age of one between 1970 to 1980 was less than half the percentage increase for the period 1960 to 1970, the actual increase in their numbers between 1960 and 1980 was extremely high. Blacks will have to pay serious attention to this fact. It is strongly doubted whether the economically active group (20-64 years old) of the Black population will in the immediate future be financially able to fulfil their obligations towards their children (0-19 years old) and elderly people (65+ years), without considerably lowering their standard of living.

The population figures of the other three groups (Whites, Coloureds and Asians) are small compared with the large number of Blacks. It would be extremely difficult for the former three groups to help carry the liabilities and responsibilities of the economically active group of Blacks as well, unless they are prepared to lower their own standard of living - something to which they would not easily resign themselves.

An examination of Diagram 3.2 reveals that there is no difference between the histogram patterns for Whites, Coloureds and Asians in Southern Africa and their respective histogram patterns in the White area. It can therefore be deduced that the numbers of these three population groups in the area mentioned are not affected by the self-governing national and independent states. A minimum number of Whites, Coloureds and Asians apparently live in both the self-governing and independent states.

3.1.5 Increases and decreases of the total population and of children under the age of one per population group for the periods 1960 to 1970, 1970 to 1980 and 1960 to 1980

Comment on Table 3.4:

Table 3.1 and Diagrams 3.1 and 3.2 are also at issue here.

The total population of Southern Africa consists of four different population groups: Whites, Coloureds, Asians and Blacks. Five different sets of data on Southern Africa are compared with one another in Table 3.4. The data concern the

- total population,
- White population,
- Coloured population,
- Asian population, and
- Black population.

The comparison aims at determining possible similarities, differences and/or deviations in respect of the percentage increases in the population figures of each population group and the percentage increases or decreases in the numbers of children under the age of one for each population group, for 1960, 1970 and 1980 respectively. As the figures used in Table 3.4 are the actual figures, the conclusions that are drawn should be interpreted in accordance with the way in which each was formulated and it should be borne in mind that the actual figures might not be true representations.

If the latter proves to be the case, all the institutions concerned should familiarize themselves thoroughly with the actual available data.

Comment on Tables 3.4 and 3.5:

The total population of Southern Africa showed a mean growth rate of 4,03 % a year in the population figure for the period 1960 to 1980. The corresponding population growth rates for the four population groups were 2,36 % for Whites, 3,67 % for Coloureds, 3,60 % for Asians and 4,57 % for Blacks. Whites had the lowest percentage population growth rate and Blacks the highest.

It is striking to note that the population growth rates for Whites (2,00 %), Coloureds (2,74 %) and Asians (3,03 %) are all lower for 1970-1980 than for 1960-1970, whereas in the case of Blacks this figure (4,09 %) is higher for the period 1970 to 1980 than for 1960 to 1970.

When compared with the decade between 1960 and 1970 the period 1970 to 1980 was characterized by a sharp decrease in the numbers of children under the age of one in the total population of Southern Africa. In terms of percentages the figures for these periods were 48,48 % and 17,69 % respectively.

The four different population groups all reveal this particular trend. It should also be noted that both the White and Coloured populations did not only reveal a reduction in population in-

TABLE 3.5

CHILDREN LESS THAN 1 YEAR OLD OF TOTAL POPULATION AND OF RESPECTIVE POPULATION GROUPS IN NUMBERS, AND AS PERCENTAGES OF TOTAL POPULATION AND OF POPULATION GROUPS FOR 1960, 1970 AND 1980

	1960	1970	1980
Total population			
Population	15 978 108	21 278 285	28 848 470
Children <1 year	471 687	700 381	824 263
Children <1 year as %	2,95	3,29	2,86
Whites			
Population	3 078 314	3 773 282	4 528 100
Children <1 year	70 689	85 576	72 400
Children <1 year as %	2,30	2,27	1,60
Coloureds			
Population	1 506 798	2 050 699	2 612 780
Children <1 year	58 270	70 328	63 120
Children <1 year as %	3,87	3,43	2,42
Asians			
Population	477 471	630 372	821 320
Children <1 year	15 142	19 407	19 720
Children <1 year as %	3,17	3,08	2,40
Blacks			
Population	10 915 525	14 823 932	20 886 270
Children <1 year	327 586	525 070	669 023
Children <1 year as %	3,00	3,54	3,20

Sources: Tables 3.1, 3.2 and 3.3.

creases for the period 1970 to 1980, but also a strong decrease in the number of children under the age of one, compared with the increases for the period 1960 to 1970. Between 1960 and 1970 Whites still experienced a percentage increase of 21,0 %, but the figure for the decade 1970-1980 reflected a decrease of 15,40 %. In the case of Coloureds the increase of 20,69 % became a decrease of 10,25 % for the two corresponding periods. The Asians' considerable population growth of 28,17 % dropped to a slight increase of 1,61 % for the two periods concerned, while in the case of the Black population the initial increase of 60,29 % dwindled to an increase of 27,42 % for the same periods.

It is difficult to explain the reason why, in all the population groups, the numbers of children under the age of one were proportionately so much lower in 1980. Owing to the lack of similar statistics for, for example, the ten years between 1970 and 1980, it is also impossible to determine exactly for how long this decrease in the number of children under the age of one has occurred.

The mean percentage increases in population figures of the four different population groups for the periods 1960 to 1970, 1970 to 1980 and 1960 to 1980 differ from the mean percentage increases in the numbers of children under the age of one of the same population groups for the three periods mentioned. However the differences do not follow a fixed pattern. For the period 1960 to 1970 the mean percentage increases (or even decreases) in the numbers of children under the age of one are all lower than the mean percentage increases in population figures for the White, Coloured and Asian populations, though considerably higher for the Black population. Between 1970 and 1980 the percentage increases in the numbers of children under the age of one for all four population groups are lower than the mean percentage increase in the different population figures. When these two ten-year periods are regarded as a single period of 20 years (1960 to 1980), the percentage increases of children in the White, Coloured and Asian populations are much lower than the percentage increases in the overall population figures of these groups, whereas the difference for the Black population is still higher.

3.1.6 Age intervals of the potential school population within the total population and of the respective population groups for the periods 1960 to 1970, 1970 to 1980 and 1960 to 1980

Diagram 3.3 (Total population: Age intervals of potential school population for 1960, 1970 and 1980) illustrates the age intervals of the potential school population within the total population for the years 1960, 1970 and 1980. Each of the different age groups shows a mean percentage increase of approximately 4 % a year between 1960 and 1980.

Diagram 3.4 (White population in White area: Age intervals of potential school population in 1960, 1970 and 1980) illustrates for the White population the potential school population in five different age intervals for the years 1960, 1970 and 1980. In 1980 there was a notable decrease in the number of children in the age group 0-4 years, and this could easily lead to a surplus of school

DIAGRAM 3.3
TOTAL POPULATION: AGE INTERVALS OF POTENTIAL SCHOOL POPULATION IN 1960, 1970 AND 1980

Source: Tables 3.1, 3.2, 3.3.

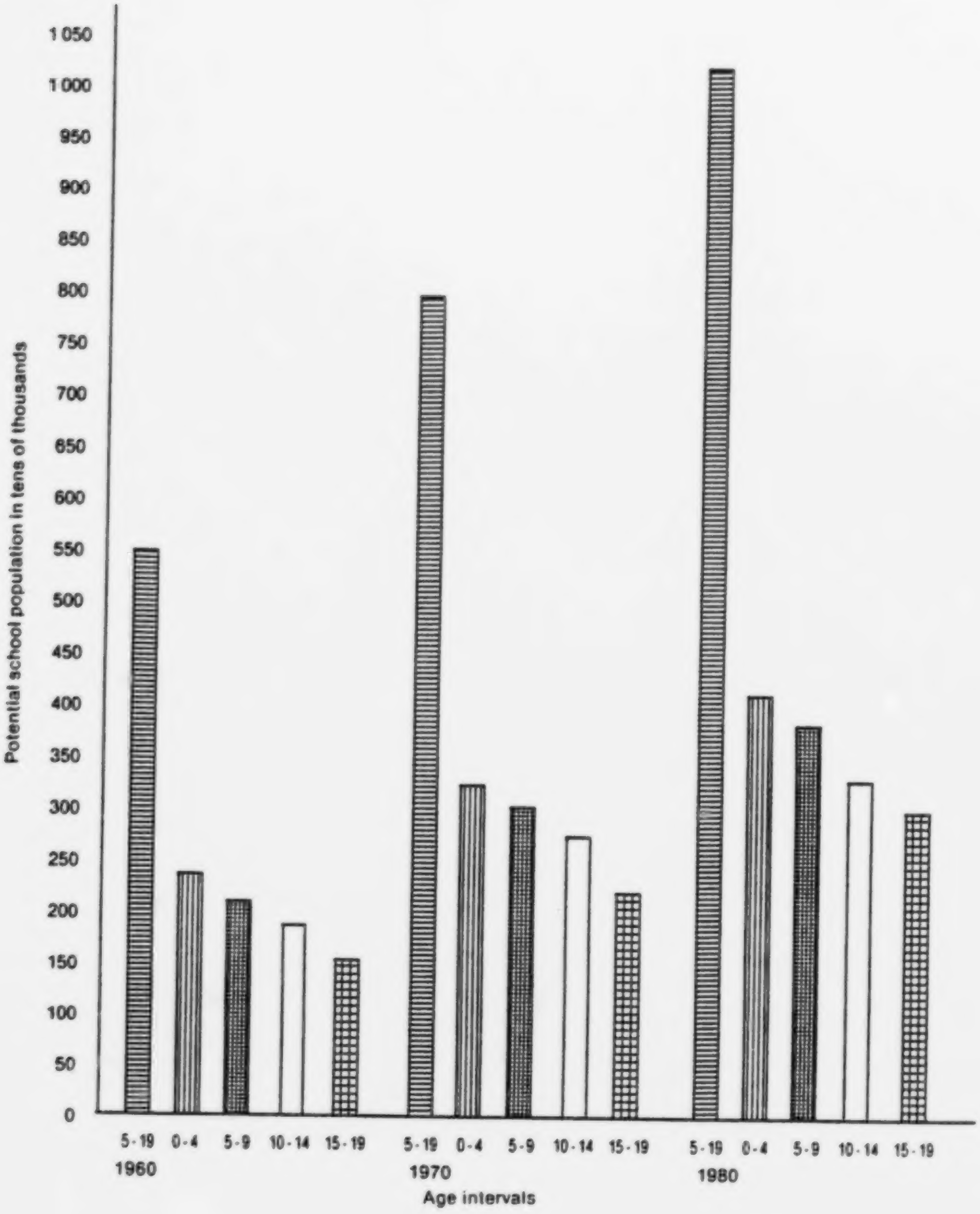
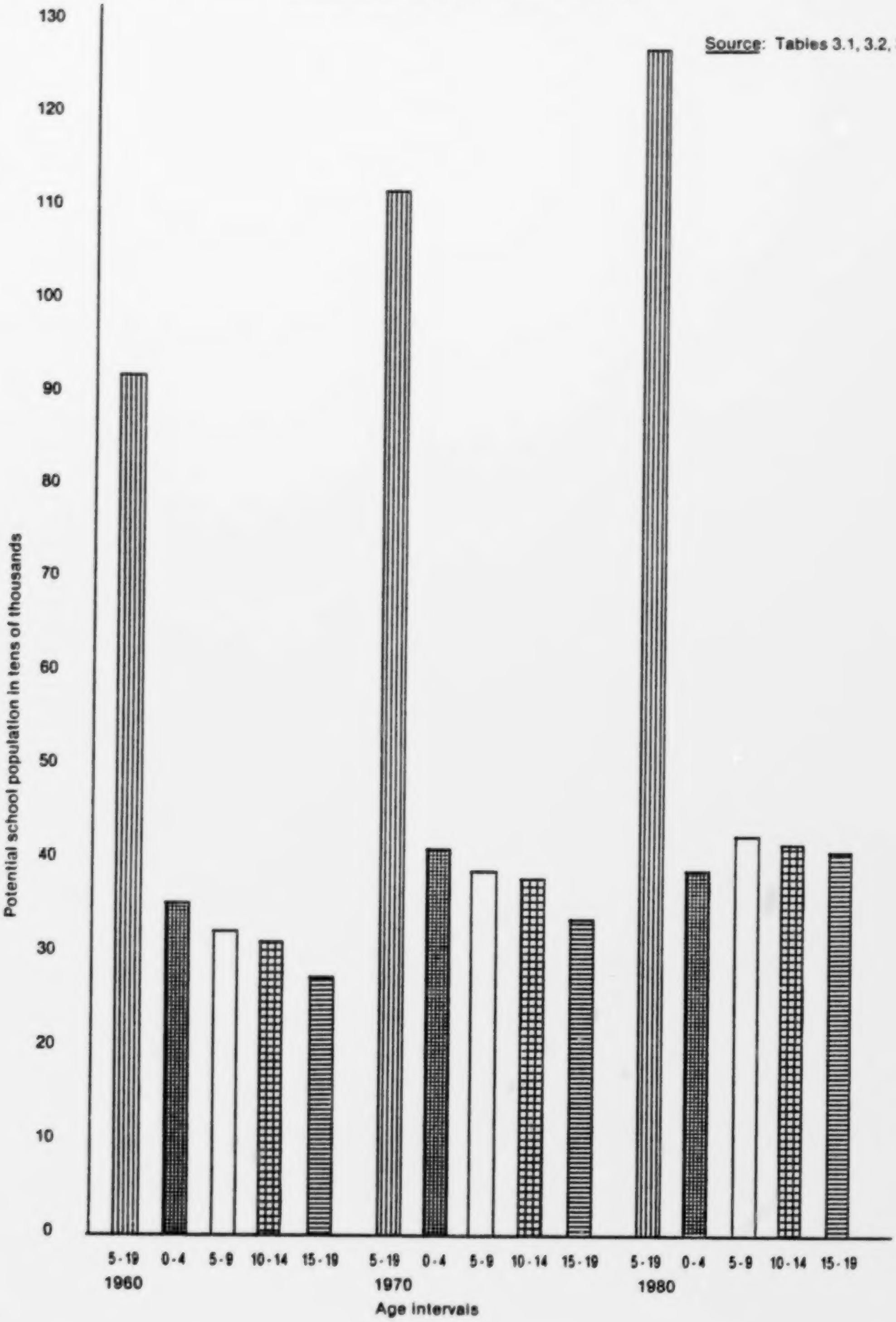


DIAGRAM 3.4
WHITE POPULATION (WHITE AREA): AGE INTERVALS OF POTENTIAL SCHOOL POPULATION IN 1960, 1970 AND 1980



Source: Tables 3.1, 3.2, 3.3.

facilities and teachers in the future; initially at primary and eventually also at secondary school level. This decrease signifies a marked drop in the number of Whites born since 1975.

Diagram 3.5 (Coloured population in White area: Age intervals of potential school population in 1960, 1970 and 1980) illustrates the same trend for the potential Coloured population as for Whites. The census of 1980 also revealed a decrease in the group of Coloured children in the age group 0-4 years.

The position of the Asian population is indicated in Diagram 3.6 and also points to a decrease in the number of children in the age group 0-4 years.

Diagram 3.7 provides similar information on the potential school population in the ranks of the Black population. In contrast to the other three population groups a sharp increase occurred in the potential Black school population during the period 1960 to 1980. This can be ascribed particularly to the high birthrate of the Black population, though also to other factors such as

- a presumably great degree of underregistration of births and deaths, especially in earlier years;

- inadequate data possibly obtained in previous censuses with regard to dates of birth and ages, and

DIAGRAM 3.5

COLOURED POPULATION (WHITE AREA): AGE INTERVALS OF POTENTIAL SCHOOL POPULATION IN 1960, 1970 AND 1980

Source: Tables 3.1, 3.2, 3.3.

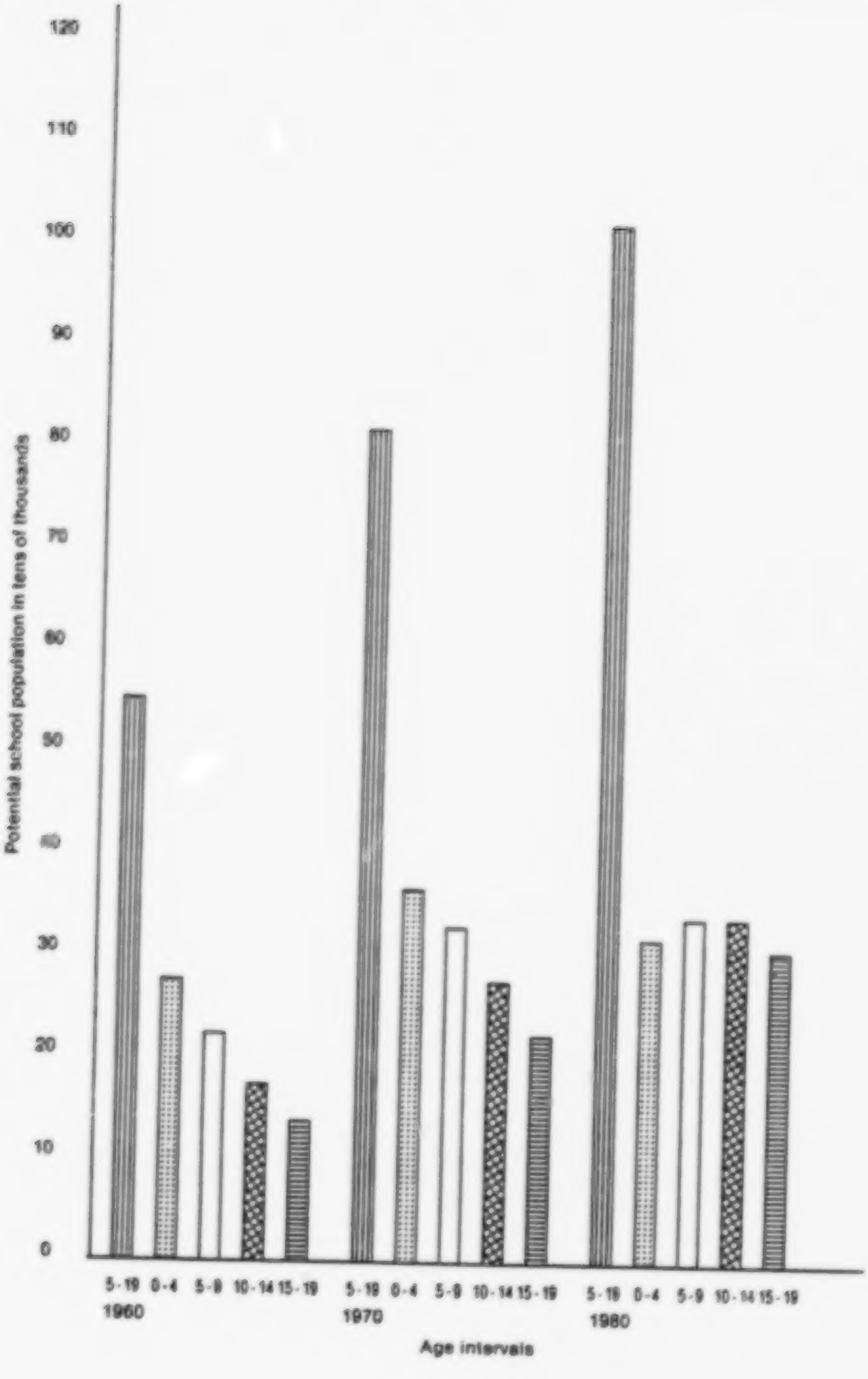


DIAGRAM 3.6
ASIAN POPULATION (WHITE AREA): AGE INTERVALS OF POTENTIAL SCHOOL POPULATION IN 1960, 1970 AND 1980

Source: Tables 3.1, 3.2, 3.3.

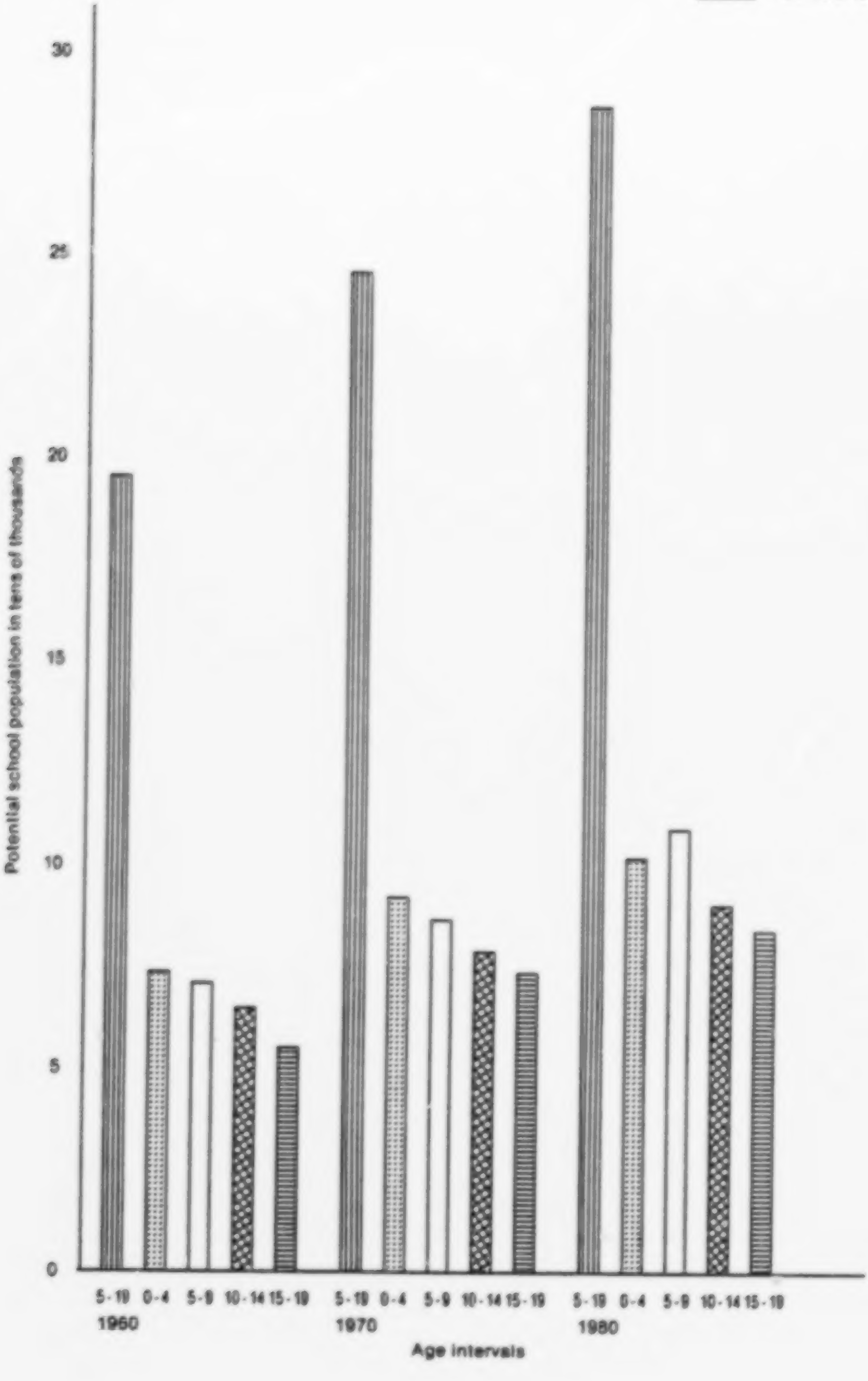
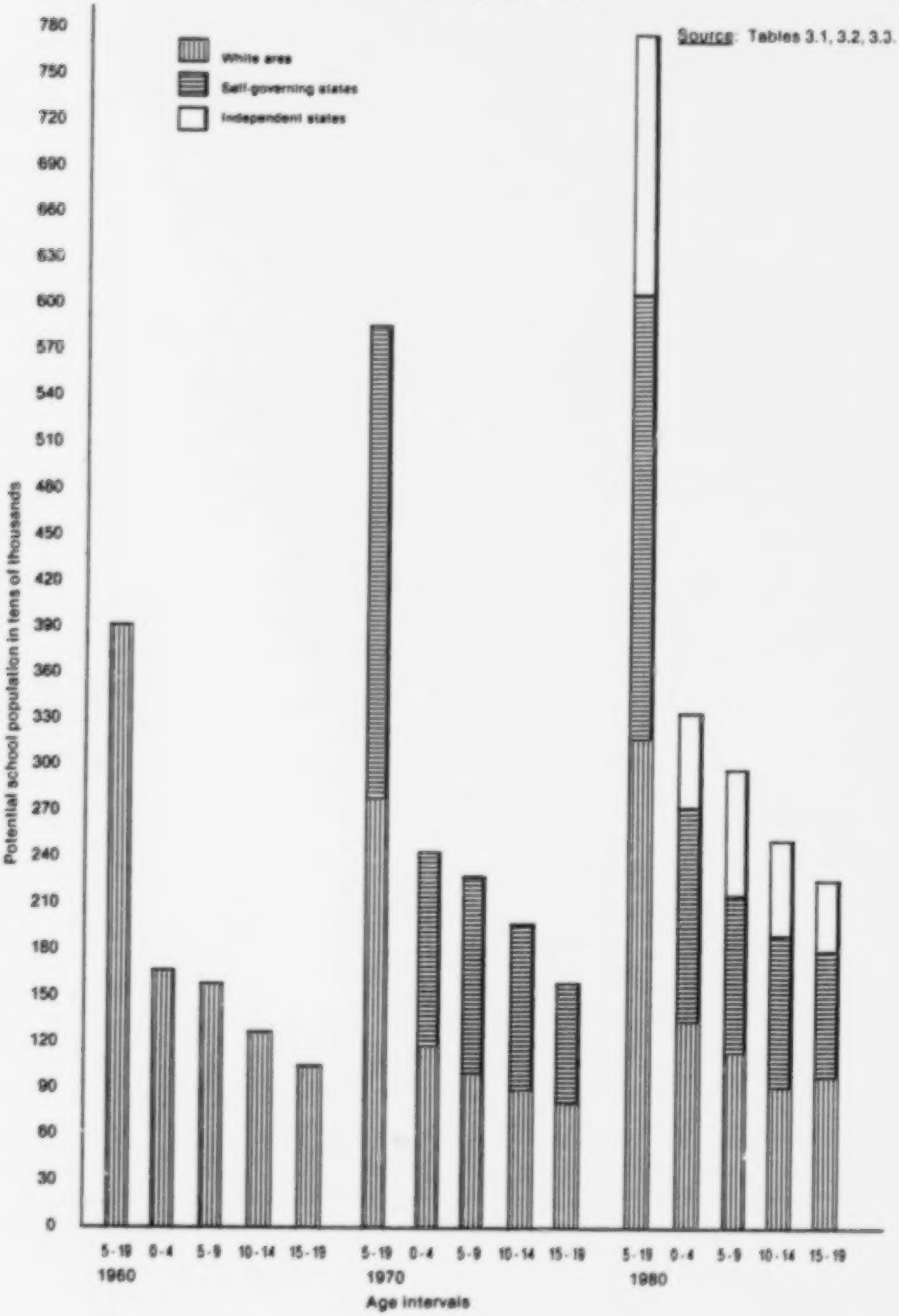


DIAGRAM 3.7
TOTAL BLACK POPULATION (WHITE AREA, INDEPENDENT AND SELF-GOVERNING STATES): AGE INTERVALS OF POTENTIAL SCHOOL POPULATION IN 1960, 1970 AND 1980



Source: Tables 3.1, 3.2, 3.3.

- the apparent decrease in the mortality rate among Blacks and an increase in their life expectancy as a result of improved health services to and improved economic conditions among Blacks.

A schematic representation of the composition of the Black population in the White area and in the self-governing national states is provided for 1970 while Blacks living in the independent states were also included in the 1980 survey. In 1970 the potential Black school population in the self-governing national states was somewhat higher than the corresponding figure in the White area. In 1980 almost two thirds of the potential Black school population lived in the self-governing national and independent states, while the remainder lived in the White area.

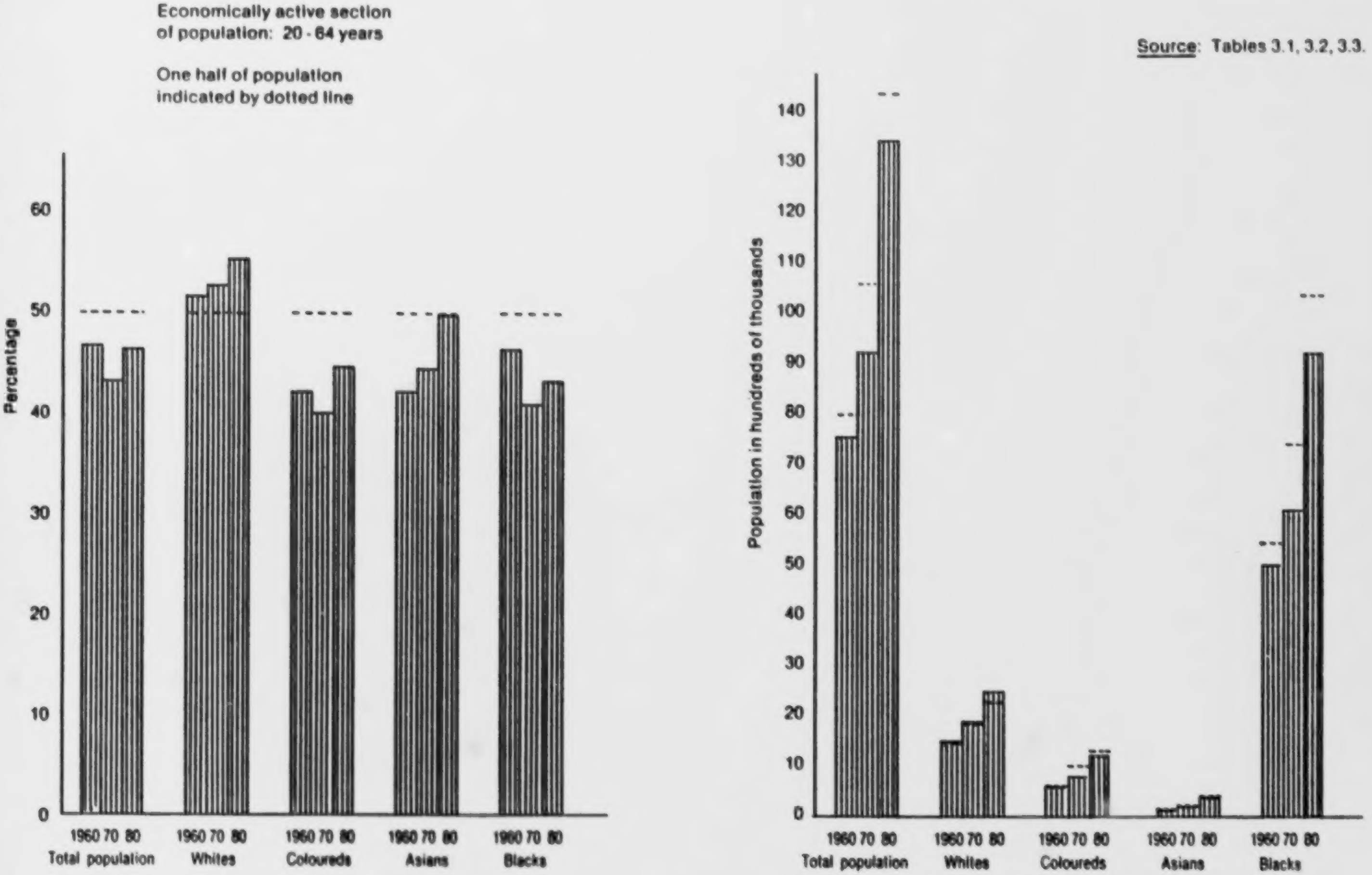
3.1.7 The economically active labour market of the population

The population of a country is the only source of its economically active manpower components. The composition of this labour force with regard to size (numbers), age and sex, as well as the rate at which each of these elements increases, determines the maximum number of workers that are available to support the country's economy, both for the present and for the future. It should however be borne in mind that there is a difference between the maximum potential labour force mentioned above and the actual labour force. The latter is always smaller than the former. Not all persons who are within the working age interval (between 15 and 64 years) and who would in fact be qualified to work, actually join the labour force, either for remuneration or for the sake of making a profit. Some of the persons in this category are still busy with their studies, some are engaged in some or other kind of training, some are unemployed, and numerous women are involved in the family-building process. As a result the rate of participation in the labour force within a population is always lower than 100 %. This participation rate is calculated by expressing the actual number of workers as a percentage of the maximum potential number of workers.

The labour participation rate of a population should rather be regarded as an important indicator of the population or the population group. The economically active section of a population should *first of all* provide for its own needs and *secondly* for the needs of its dependents. These dependents come from two groups in the population, i.e. (a) persons in the age interval 0-19 years old and (b) persons 65 years and older, in other words the school population and elderly people. The size of the economically active group determines *inter alia* the standard of living of the population, the degree of economic development, and the forms of education, training and other social services that are available to the population.

The following two kinds of information are illustrated in Diagram 3.8:

DIAGRAM 3.8
TOTAL POPULATION AND INDIVIDUAL POPULATION GROUPS



A ECONOMICALLY ACTIVE SECTION OF POPULATION IN RELATIVE PERCENTAGES FOR 1960, 1970 AND 1980

B ECONOMICALLY ACTIVE SECTION OF POPULATION IN MULTIPLES OF HUNDREDS OF THOUSANDS FOR 1960, 1970 AND 1980

Economically active section of population: 20 - 64 years

One half of population indicated by dotted line

Source: Tables 3.1, 3.2, 3.3.

firstly the economically active part of the population expressed as percentages for 1960, 1970 and 1980, for the total population, for Whites, Coloureds, Asians and Blacks, and

secondly the economically active part of the population in numbers for the same years, as well as for the same four population groups.

As far as the economically active part of the population is concerned, this representation did not include men only, but both men and women in the age group 20 to 64 years. Despite the fact that it is neither completely correct nor customary to include women as well, it should be borne in mind that a larger percentage of women than ever before have joined the labour market in recent times.

When assuming that 50 % of the total population (men plus women) in each of the four different population groups should be economically active, it is striking to note that, in terms of such an assumption, the White population group is the only one in which more than 50 % are actively taking part in the economy. Less than 50 % of all the other population groups (Coloureds, Asians and Blacks), as well as of the total population are economically active. Considering the total Asian population, the relative percentage of economically active people in this population group for the first time reached the 50 % mark in 1980.

3.2 NATURAL POPULATION GROWTH

3.2.1 Official vital statistics for 1960, 1970 and 1980

The reader is first referred to Table 3.6 (Vital statistics) which contains the official vital statistics for 1960, 1970 and 1980.

Comment on Table 3.6:

The following remarks can be made on the birthrate per 1 000 of each of the four population groups:

- The birthrate for Whites declined markedly over the 20-year period concerned (1960 to 1980);
- the birthrate for Coloureds decreased even faster than that for Whites over the same 20 years (1960 to 1980);
- although the birthrate for Asians showed a slight overall decline over the 20-year period from 1960 to 1980, it increased between 1960 and 1970, and
- because there are no accurate data for Blacks, the same estimates were given as for 1960, 1970 and 1980, and these were extremely high.

TABLE 3.6

LIFE STATISTICS

	1960	1970	1980
Birth rate (per 1 000 of population):			
Whites	24,9	23,2	16,5
Coloureds	46,7	35,9	27,8
Asians	29,7	32,8	24,0
* Blacks	40,0	40,0	40,0
Death rate (per 1000 of population):			
Whites	8,7	9,0	8,3
Coloureds	15,6	14,0	9,2
Asians	7,6	6,9	5,9
* Blacks	12,0	12,0	12,0
Natural growth rate % (births minus deaths):			
Whites	1,62	1,42	0,82
Coloureds	3,11	2,19	1,86
Asians	2,21	2,59	1,81
* Blacks	2,80	2,80	2,80
Growth rate of Whites (natural growth rate including net immigration):	2,24	2,27	1,21

* Estimated.

Source: Central Statistical Services (1982, p.XV).

TABLE 3.7
PERCENTAGE DIFFERENCES WITH REGARD TO BIRTH FIGURES PER 1 000 OF POPULATION FOR 1960-1970, 1970-1980 AND 1960-1980

	Whites	Coloureds	Asians	Blacks
1960 to 1970	24,9 - 23,2	46,7 - 35,9	29,7 - 32,8	*40,0 - 40,0
Decrease	1,7	10,8		
Increase			3,1	
%	6,83	23,13	10,44	
1970 to 1980	23,2 - 16,5	35,9 - 27,8	32,7 - 24,0	*40,0 - 40,0
Decrease	6,7	8,1	8,7	
Increase				
%	28,88	22,56	26,61	
1960 to 1980	24,9 - 16,5	46,7 - 27,8	29,7 - 24,0	*40,0 - 40,0
Decrease	8,4	18,9	5,7	
Increase				
%	33,74	40,47	19,19	

Source: Table 3.6.

* Estimated.

3.2.2 Birth and death rates

Table 3.7 contains the percentage differences with regard to birthrates per 1 000 of the White, Coloured and Asian populations during the periods 1960 to 1970, 1970 to 1980 and 1960 to 1980. Those percentage differences that represent decreases in respect of the period 1960 to 1980 are very high for Whites and Coloureds. The percentage birthrate for Asians increased between 1960 and 1970 and decreased between 1970 and 1980. A net decrease in birthrate was recorded over the period 1960 to 1980 as a whole.

Regarding the mortality rates per 1 000 of the four population groups, it seems that

- the mortality rate of Whites decreased over the two decades, but nevertheless showed a slight increase between 1960 and 1970;

- that of the Coloured population decreased slightly from 1960 to 1970 and sharply from 1970 to 1980;

- that of Asians gradually declined over the two decades, and

- only an estimated (constant) figure is given for Blacks.

The natural growth rate (percentage) of the White population group shows a sharp decrease over the 20-year period between 1960 and 1980, that of the Coloured population group a large decrease, and that of the Asian population group a reasonable decrease, despite a slight increase between 1960 and 1970. An approximated (constant) estimate is given for Blacks.

3.2.3 Natural growth rate

Table 3.8 indicates the percentage differences in respect of the natural growth rate (%) of the population for the periods 1960 to 1970, 1970 to 1980, and 1960 to 1980. In the case of Whites these percentages (decrease in natural growth rate) are very high for the periods 1970 to 1980 and 1960 to 1980. For the Coloured population the decrease that occurred from 1970 to 1980 is lower than the one that occurred from 1960 to 1970, and the decrease over the entire period from 1960 to 1980 is also reasonably high. In respect of the Asian population an increase is reported for the period 1960 to 1970, a reasonable decrease for the period 1970 to 1980, but a small increase for the period 1960 to 1980. No percentages could be calculated for the Black population group, because a constant figure was given for all these periods.

The Institute for Sociological and Demographic Research (previously known as The South African Institute for Sociological, Demographic and Criminological Research) of the HSRC publicized Mostert's research finding No. S-N-227, Vitale koerse onder Swartes in 1981. The following information is inter alia supplied in this document:

TABLE 3.8

PERCENTAGE DIFFERENCES WITH REGARD TO NATURAL GROWTH RATE % OF POPULATION FOR 1960-1970, 1970-1980 AND 1960-1980

	Whites	Coloured	Asians	Blacks
1960 to 1970	1,62-1,42	3,11-2,19	2,21-2,59	* 2,80-2,80
Decrease	0,20	0,92		
Increase			0,38	
%	12,35	29,58	17,20	?
Mean % p.a.	1,24	2,96	1,72	?
1970 to 1980	1,42-0,82	2,19-1,86	2,59-1,81	* 2,80-2,80
Decrease	0,60	0,33	0,78	
Increase				
%	42,25	15,07	30,12	?
Mean % p.a.	4,23	1,51	3,01	?
1960 to 1980	1,62-0,82	3,11-1,86	2,21-1,81	* 2,80-2,80
Decrease	0,80	1,25	0,40	
Increase				
%	49,38	40,19	18,10	?
Mean % p.a.	2,47	2,01	0,91	?

Source: Table 3.6.

* Estimated.

In the 1960, 1970 and 1980 censuses Black women were asked whether they had given birth during the preceding 12 months. However with regard to the developing countries experience has taught that this method does not yield reliable fertility indices. The responses concerning births that are obtained in this way are insufficient in most cases, as a smaller or greater degree of undercounting inevitably occurs.

In the 1960 census only the numbers of births of women who had ever been married were tabled, whereas the information for the 1970 census included all women. That means that for the 1960 census there was an undercount owing to the omission of illegitimate births and consequently adjustments had to be made. A birthrate for 1960 of about 45 per 1 000 was obtained in this way. The birthrate for 1970 was 37,1, in other words a decrease of nearly 8 per 1 000 over a period of 10 years. In his investigation Mostert (1981: 1) agrees that both these figures may seem somewhat low, but he states that a decrease, probably as a result of the influence of modernization on urban Blacks in particular, apparently occurred in the birthrate for Blacks between 1960 and 1970. Owing to modernization the mortality rate of a population also decreases, and because of the generally improved state of health of the women, this in turn causes a rise in the birthrate. It is nevertheless stated that the Black populations are in the process of moving from a stage of high mortality and birthrate to the transitional stage of a sharply decreasing mortality rate and a gradually declining birthrate.

Census figures for 1980 were not yet available when the above conclusions were drawn.

In Table 1 of Mostert (1981: 2) the birthrates per 1 000 for 1960 and 1970 are reflected as follows:

1960 census			1970 census
Rural	Urban	All women	All women
42,8	34,5	40,2	37,1

According to Mostert (1981: 5) Lötter and Van Tonder (1976) calculated the birthrates per 1 000 (listed below) after a countrywide survey among Blacks:

"Total population	38,5
Urban population	35,9
Rural population	39,8
White area	36,6
Black states	40,3
Sotho	35,8
Nguni	40,9"

The birthrate of 38,5 indicated above, together with the census results in Table 1 of Mostert (1981: 2), not only points to a declining trend in the fertility of Blacks in recent times, but also to the fact that fertility is lower in the urban areas than in the rural areas. However a decrease in fertility also occurs in the latter areas.

The birthrate for Sotho-speaking Blacks is lower than that for their Nguni-speaking counterparts. The reasons for the differences in fertility might be attributed to the fact that Sotho-speakers have a greater degree of contact with the modern urban lifestyle of Whites, they are less traditional, and contraceptive services have been more readily available to the average person over a longer period than in the case of Nguni-speaking Blacks. Most Sothos also live in and around the PWV area and the other urban areas of the Transvaal, while Nguni-speakers live predominantly in the more rural areas of Natal and the Eastern Cape and probably come into contact with the Western way of life less often.

A decrease in the fertility of the Black population has already been noticed and this trend is expected to continue.

The natural growth rate of the Black population groups of Southern Africa cannot be calculated simply by deducting the number of deaths from the number of births for a given period. It is generally known that Blacks do not always report births and deaths as regularly as would be required for statistical purposes. Statistical information in this regard therefore tends to be extremely incomplete. Despite the fact that other indirect methods are used to calculate the probable growth rate for Blacks, actual growth rates are not at all available for this group. It is generally accepted, . however, that the growth rate for Blacks is steadily increasing and that it is higher than the mean growth rate of the total population of Southern Africa. The reader is subsequently referred to Tables 3.1, 3.2 and 3.3 and his attention is drawn to the columns for Black children under the age of one and for children in the age intervals 0-4, 5-9, 10-14 and 15-19 years. Growth rates are not available for the nine different Black populations. These rates should not differ much from one another. The extent to which they actually do is not known.

Table 3.6 contains official vital statistics, such as birthrates per 1 000 per population group, mortality rates per 1 000 per population group and natural growth rate per 100 per population group. In the case of Blacks the figures for 1960, 1970 and 1980 are identical but they are mere estimates.

The HSRC conducted research on vital rates among Blacks (Mostert (1981)) in order to determine the birthrate among Blacks. These birthrates are included in Table 3.9 (Comparison between birthrates per 1 000 and number of children under the age of one per 1 000 of the various population groups for 1960, 1970 and 1980). Mortality figures are not at all included in Table 3.9. Although the deathrates for Whites, Coloureds and Asians are known, those that are available for Blacks are mere estimates and identical for 1960, 1970 and 1980.

Tables 3.9 and 3.10 aim at drawing comparisons between the official birthrates per 1 000 and the numbers of children under the age of one per 1 000 of the respective population groups for 1960,

TABLE 3.9
COMPARISON BETWEEN BIRTH RATE PER 1 000 AND NUMBER OF CHILDREN YOUNGER THAN 1 YEAR PER 1 000 OF RESPECTIVE POPULATION GROUPS FOR 1960, 1970 AND 1980

Population	1960		1970		1980	
	Birth rate	Number of children < 1 year	Birth rate	Number of children < 1 year	Birth rate	Number of children < 1 year
Grand total	37,6+	$\frac{471\ 687}{15\ 978\ 108}$ = 29,5	34,4+	$\frac{700\ 381}{21\ 278\ 285}$ = 32,9	33,7+	$\frac{824\ 263}{28\ 848\ 470}$ = 28,6
Whites (White area)	⊙24,9	$\frac{70\ 689}{3\ 078\ 314}$ = 23,0	⊙23,2	$\frac{85\ 576}{3\ 773\ 282}$ = 22,7	⊙16,5	$\frac{72\ 400}{4\ 528\ 100}$ = 16,0
Coloureds (White area)	⊙46,7	$\frac{58\ 270}{1\ 506\ 798}$ = 38,7	⊙35,9	$\frac{70\ 328}{2\ 050\ 699}$ = 34,3	⊙27,8	$\frac{63\ 120}{2\ 612\ 780}$ = 24,2
Asians (White area)	⊙29,7	$\frac{15\ 142}{477\ 471}$ = 31,7	⊙32,8	$\frac{19\ 407}{630\ 372}$ = 30,8	⊙24,0	$\frac{19\ 720}{821\ 320}$ = 24,0
All Blacks together	⊙40 (estimated) *40,2	$\frac{327\ 586}{10\ 915\ 525}$ = 30,0	⊙40 (estimated) *37,1	$\frac{525\ 070}{14\ 823\ 932}$ =35,4	? *1974: 38,5	$\frac{699\ 023}{20\ 886\ 270}$ = 33,5
Blacks (white area)	* Urban 34,5	N/A		$\frac{254\ 123}{7\ 717\ 769}$ = 32,9	⊙ 40 (estimated) *1974: 36,6	$\frac{259\ 680}{10\ 121\ 420}$ = 25,7
Blacks (self-governing + independent states	* Rural 42,8	N/A		$\frac{270\ 947}{7\ 106\ 163}$ = 38,1	? *1974: 40,3	$\frac{409\ 343}{10\ 764\ 850}$ = 38,0

Sources: .Tables 3.1, 3.2 and 3.3.
⊙ .Central Statistical Services (1982, p.XV).
* .Mostert (1981, pp.2, 5).
+ .Own calculations (see attached Appendix to Table 3.9).

APPENDIX TO TABLE 3.9

CALCULATING BIRTH RATE OF TOTAL POPULATION OF SOUTHERN AFRICA FOR 1960, 1970 AND 1980

Formula: Population number x birth rate ÷ 1 000 = number of births.
See total for 4 population groups for total number of births.
Total number of births ÷ total population x 1 000 = birth rate.

For 1960: Whites : 3 078 314 x 24,9 ÷ 1 000 = 76 650
Coloureds : 1 506 798 x 46,7 ÷ 1 000 = 70 367
Asians : 477 471 x 29,7 ÷ 1 000 = 14 180
Blacks : 10 915 525 x* 40,2 ÷ 1 000 = 438 804
Total 600 001
600 001 ÷ 15 978 108 x 1 000 = 37,6

For 1970: Whites : 3 773 282 x 23,2 ÷ 1 000 = 87 540
Coloureds : 2 050 699 x 35,9 ÷ 1 000 = 73 620
Asians : 630 372 x 32,8 ÷ 1 000 = 20 676
Blacks : 14 823 932 x* 37,1 ÷ 1 000 = 549 967
Total 731 803
731 803 ÷ 21 278 285 x 1 000 = 34,4

For 1980: Whites : 4 528 100 x 16,5 ÷ 1 000 = 74 713
Coloureds : 2 612 780 x 27,8 ÷ 1 000 = 72 635
Asians : 821 320 x 24,0 ÷ 1 000 = 19 711
Blacks : 20 886 270 x* 38,5 ÷ 1 000 = 804 121
Total 971 180
971 180 ÷ 28 848 470 x 1 000 = 33,7

*HSRC'S 1974 figures were used since no other figures are available (Mostert 1981, pp. 2, 5).

TABLE 3.10

HOW OFFICIAL NATURAL GROWTH RATE PER 100 COMPARES WITH NATURAL GROWTH RATE PER 100 CALCULATED FOR NUMBER OF CHILDREN YOUNGER THAN 1 YEAR PER POPULATION GROUP FOR 1960, 1970 AND 1980

Year	Population	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	Official natural growth rate per 100(%)	Unoffical natural growth rate per 100(%)	How do unofficial and official growth rates compare?	Difference
		Birth rate per 1 000 (official)	Number of children <1 year per 1 000 (calculated)	Death rate per 1 000 (official)	Natural growth rate per 1 000 (a)-(c) (official)	Natural growth rate per 1 000 (b)-(c) (unofficial)				
1960	Whites	24,9	23,0	8,7	16,2	14,3	1,62	1,43	too low	(0,20)
	Coloureds	46,7	38,7	15,6	31,1	23,1	3,11	2,31	too low	(0,80)
	Asians	29,7	31,7	7,6	22,1	24,1	2,21	2,41	too high	(+0,20)
	Blacks	40,2	30,0	12,0	28,2	18,0	2,80	1,80	too low	(1,00)
1970	Whites	23,2	22,7	9,0	14,2	13,7	1,42	1,37	too low	(0,05)
	Coloureds	35,9	34,3	14,0	21,9	20,3	2,19	2,03	too low	(0,16)
	Asians	32,8	30,8	6,9	25,9	23,9	2,59	2,39	too low	(0,20)
	Blacks	37,1	35,4	12,0	25,1	23,4	2,80	2,34	too low	(0,46)
1980	Whites	16,5	16,0	8,3	8,2	7,7	0,82	0,77	too low	(0,05)
	Coloureds	27,8	24,2	9,2	18,6	15,0	1,86	1,50	too low	(0,36)
	Asians	24,0	24,0	5,9	18,1	18,1	1,81	1,81	same	
	Blacks	38,5	33,5	12,0	26,5	21,5	2,80	2,15	too low	(0,65)

Sources: Tables 3.6 and 3.9.

1970 and 1980. The numbers of children under the age of one per 1 000 were calculated from the officially available statistics (Central Statistical Services (1982: XV)). In order to obtain the two types of numerical data mentioned above for the total population, calculations were based on the information that was available for the the different population groups (see Appendix to Table 3.9).

Comment on Table 3.9:

In the case of Whites there is only a slight difference between the two types of figures. The birthrate is constantly somewhat higher than the figure for children under the age of one. In the case of Coloureds these two figures differ much more. The birthrate is always higher than the figure for children under the age of one. In respect of the Asian population there is also a difference between the two types of figures. For 1960 the birthrate is lower, for 1970 it is higher and for 1980 the two figures are the same. The birthrates for Blacks that are supplied by the Central Statistical Services (1982: XV) and by Mostert (1981: 2) are consistently higher than the figures for the number of children under the age of one. It is extremely difficult to draw meaningful comparisons in the case of Blacks, since the figures provided by the Central Statistical Services are estimates only and the numbers of children under the age of one are undercounts throughout (as mentioned earlier in Paragraph 1.2 of Chapter 1). In the case of the total population the calculated birthrates are consistently higher than the calculated figures for children under the age of one, but there are great differences between the two kinds of figures for 1960 and 1980.

As far as Table 3.10 is concerned the information of Tables 3.6 and 3.9 was used to calculate and compare the official and non-official natural growth rates per 100. Since there are so many differences it is obviously very difficult to use the figures for the children under the age of one.

3.2.4 Fertility and mortality as determinants of population growth

The preceding statistics clearly show that fertility and mortality are two highly important determinants of population growth. The birthrate of a country declines in accordance with the degree to which its subsistence economy develops into and changes to an industrial economy and its social and medical services develop, improve and become more specialized. It should be accepted that the two factors mentioned above have already affected and lowered the growth rate of Whites in particular, as well as that of Coloureds and Asians (to a certain extent only). The latest statistics on the natural growth rate per 100 (births minus deaths) contained in Table 3.6 indicate that by 1980 the growth rate for Whites, Coloureds and Asians had already declined considerably. Although it is generally accepted that statistics on different age groups of populations in developing countries are subject to undercounts and might possibly be erroneous, the latest statistics of 1970 and 1980 for Black children in the age groups 0-4, 5-9, 10-14 years and living in the White area, distinctly reveal that the two factors mentioned above (industrial economical development and specialized services) have already had an effect on the growth rate of this part of the Black population, seeing that their growth rate is gradually decreasing. During the period 1970 to 1980 the percentage composition of these age groups (0-4, 5-9 and 10-14 years old) of the Black population respectively decreased by 1,90 (15,15 - 13,25), 2,05 (13,48 - 11,43) and 2,17 (11,78 - 9,61) (see Table 3.2).

3.2.5 Other factors that determine population growth

As the population of a country - or as in the case of Southern Africa, the different population groups in a country - accept new norms, undergo social changes and experience a rise in their standard of living, the natural growth rate of the population or population groups is affected in such a way that a decrease occurs in birthrates, deathrates and population growth rates. Other factors, such as socio-economic structures, also have an effect on the growth rate and migrational trends of a nation.

3.2.6 Additional factual information concerning population growth

1) The factual information below has been adopted from Volkskas's Ekonomiese Soeklig (March 1983: 3):

   - According to the Statistical News Release P11 (published by the Central Statistical Services on 29 December 1982, the total population of the RSA was 25,5 million towards the middle of 1982. The figures and percentages of the total population for the respective groups were as follows: 4 674 000 Whites (18,3 %), 2 715 000 Coloureds (10,6 %), 853 000 Asians (3,3 %) and 17 258 000 Blacks (67,7 %).

- The mean annual population increase for the period 1970 to 1980 was 1,67 % for the White, 2,25 % for the Coloured, and 2,38 % for the Asian populations. The growth of the Black population was not taken into account because of changes in the statistics owing to the gaining of independence of certain Black states.

- The Central Statistical Services publish birthrates and mortality rates for Whites, Coloureds and Asians. During the decade up to 1980 the number of births per thousand of the White population decreased from 23,2 to 16,5, that of the Coloured population decreased from 35,8 to 27,8 and that of the Asian population decreased from 32,8 to 24,0. The birthrates of each of these three population groups therefore tended to decline. A mean annual decrease of 2,5 % was recorded in the birthrate for Whites, and 0,8 % and 1,6 % in the corresponding figures for Coloureds and Asians respectively. If these trends continue the number of births among Coloureds can be expected to start exceeding the number of births among Whites by 1984.

- In the decade 1970 to 1980 the mortality figure for Whites varied between 8 and 9 per 1 000 of the population and recently this figure tended to increase slightly, probably as a result of the increase in the mean age of the White population. The number of deaths among Coloureds on the other hand decreased from approximately 14 per 1 000 in 1970 to just over 9 per 1 000 in 1980, and the corresponding figure for Asians decreased from 6,8 per 1 000 in 1970 to 5,9 per 1 000 in 1980.

2) The information below which is inter alia contained in the Report of the Science Committee of the President's Council concerning demographic trends was published in the newspaper Viva 4(7), (April, 1983):

- There was such a sharp decline in the birthrate of Whites in the Republic of South Africa that by the end of the seventies White women were not giving birth to a sufficient number of girls to ensure that the number of women in the population remained constant. In 1980 it was calculated that, during their reproductive period, every 1 000 White females gave birth to only 963 girls who would eventually reach childbearing age. This means that the growth rate for Whites is already a negative one at present. Similar calculations were made for the other population groups and it was found that, during their reproductive years, every 1 000 Asian, Coloured and Black women respectively gave birth to 1 278, 1 427 and an estimated 2 500 daughters (Science Committee, 1983: 61).

- The Science Committee furthermore stated that, in contrast with the marked decline in the fertility trends of Asians, Whites and Coloureds, there is only a very gradual decline in the fertility of Blacks.

- In 1980 the White fertility rate was 2,03 (already lower than the substitution level of 2,1), the figure for Asians was 2,70, that for Coloureds 3,29, and that for Blacks more than 5 (Science Committee, 1983: 47).

- "The total fertility rate that is referred to, is an index that reflects the total number of children that a woman can be expected to give birth to, provided the fertility pattern for the particular calendar year or period does not change." (Translation.)

- It is also reported in *Viva* that the total fertility rate for *Whites* decreased from approximately 3,5 in 1960 to below the substitution level in 1978. In the case of the *Coloured* population the total figure decreased from almost 6,5 in 1962 to 3,29 in 1980. Regarding the *Asian* population group, the figure decreased from 6,13 in 1950 to 2,70 in 1980. The highest estimated figure for *Blacks,* which had been 6,82 in 1955, in the meantime dropped to approximately 5,2 (Science Committee, 1983: 47).

- During recent years there was a marked decrease in infant mortality (deathrate among children) for all four population groups. In the case of the *White* population group the approximately 90 deaths per 1 000 in 1910 decreased to 13 per 1 000 in 1980. The figure for Coloureds varied at the level of about 130 per 1 000 between 1950 and 1970 and decreased to 61,9 in 1980, while that for Asians decreased from 90 per 1 000 during the 1940s to 20,4 in 1980. The estimated figure for the Black population group decreased from approximately 200 per 1 000 during the thirties to 116 per 1 000 between 1955 and 1960. Experts estimate the mortality rate for Black babies at 90 per 1 000 for 1980 (Science Committee, 1983: 41).

CHAPTER 4

AGE DISTRIBUTION ACCORDING TO SEX AND VARIOUS POPULATION GROUPS

4.1 AGE DISTRIBUTION ACCORDING TO SEX

The most recent figures available on the population censuses of 1970 and 1980 were used to determine the age distribution of the four different population groups in Southern Africa according to sex and the way in which the figures of the two years differ from each other. The age intervals that were used were 0-4 years, 5-9 years, 10-14 years, 15-19 years, 20-64 years and 65+ years. The Black population was distributed over three main areas: the White area, the self-governing states and the independent states. In order to obtain a meaningful overall picture of the total Black population, Blacks in all three these areas were taken into account, both separately and together. This information appears in Table 4.1.

In Paragraph 3.1.3 of Chapter 3 the age distribution of the total population of Southern Africa, the White area and the national states in 1960, 1970 and 1980 was discussed for each population group. In the comment below the emphasis falls on the distribution of the two sexes and their totals for the age groups 0-19, 20-64 and 65+ years per population group for 1970 and 1980 only.

TABLE 4.1

PERCENTAGE DISTRIBUTION OF POPULATION GROUPS ACCORDING TO SEX AND AGE INTERVALS FOR 1970 AND 1980

Age	Area	1970						1980					
		M	%	F	%	T	%	M	%	F	%	T	%
Whites													
0-4 years		208 895	50,9	201 125	49,1	410 020	100,0	199 460	50,9	192 300	49,1	391 760	100,0
%		11,1		10,6		10,9		8,8		8,5		8,6	
5-9 years		200 431	51,0	192 212	49,0	392 643	100,0	219 460	51,1	210 040	48,9	429 500	100,0
%		10,7		10,2		10,4		9,7		9,3		9,5	
10-14 years		194 368	51,1	185 833	48,9	380 201	100,0	215 500	50,7	209 960	48,3	425 460	100,0
%		10,3		9,8		10,1		9,5		9,3		9,4	
15-19 years		174 050	50,9	167 789	49,1	341 839	100,0	206 920	51,0	199 040	49,0	405 960	100,0
%		9,2		8,9		9,0		9,2		8,8		9,0	
0-19 years		777 744	51,0	746 959	49,0	1 524 703	100,0	841 340	50,9	811 340	49,1	1 652 680	100,0
%		41,3		39,5		40,4		37,2		35,9		36,5	
20-64 years		999 757	50,0	999 601	50,0	1 999 358	100,0	1 274 000	50,6	1 245 160	49,4	2 519 160	100,0
%		53,1		52,8		53,0		56,2		55,0		55,6	
65+ years		104 312	21,9	144 909	58,1	249 221	100,0	150 060	42,1	206 200	57,9	356 260	100,0
%		5,6		7,7		6,6		6,6		9,1		7,9	
TOTAL		1 881 813	49,9	1 891 469	50,1	3 773 282	100,0	2 265 400	50,0	2262 700	50,0	4 528 100	100,0
%		100,0		100,0		100,0		100,0		100,0		100,0	

TABLE 4.1 (cont.)

Age	Area	1970						1980					
		M	%	F	%	T	%	M	%	F	%	T	%
Coloureds													
0-4 years		172 352	49,7	174 156	50,3	346 508	100,0	165 620	50,0	165 920	50,0	331 450	100,0
%		17,1		16,7		16,9		12,8		12,5		12,7	
5-9 years		161 864	49,8	162 931	50,2	324 795	100,0	173 620	50,4	171 120	49,6	344 740	100,0
%		16,1		15,6		15,8		13,4		12,9		13,2	
10-14 years		137 742	49,9	138 165	50,1	275 907	100,0	173720	50,2	172 040	49,8	345 760	100,0
%		13,7		13,2		13,5		13,5		13,0		13,2	
15-19 years		107 190	49,1	111 066	50,9	218 256	100,0	159 620	49,8	160 800	50,2	320 420	100,0
%		10,6		10,7		10,6		12,4		12,2		12,3	
0-19 years		579 148	49,7	586 318	50,3	1 165 466	100,0	672 580	50,1	669 880	49,9	1 342 460	100,0
%		57,5		56,2		56,8		52,1		50,6		51,4	
20-64 years		399 634	48,6	422 516	51,4	822 150	100,0	579 920	48,9	605 960	51,1	1 185 880	100,0
%		39,7		40,5		40,1		45,0		45,8		45,4	
65+ years		28 828	45,7	34 205	54,3	63 083	100,0	37 020	43,8	47 420	56,2	84 440	100,0
%		2,8		3,3		3,1		2,9		3,6		3,2	
TOTAL		1 007 610	49,1	1 043 089	50,9	2 050 599	100,0	1 289 520	49,4	1 323 260	50,6	2 612 780	100,0
%		100,0		100,0		100,0		100,0		100,0		100,0	

TABLE 4.1 (cont.)

Age	Area	1970						1980					
		M	%	F	%	T	%	M	%	F	%	T	%
Asians													
0-4 years %		45 517 14,5	49,4	46 662 14,7	50,6	92 179 14,6	100,0	51 840 12,7	50,4	51 060 12,4	49,6	102 900 12,5	100,0
5-9 years %		43 614 13,9	49,9	43 861 13,9	50,1	87 535 13,9	100,0	55 200 13,5	50,3	54 620 13,2	49,7	109 820 13,4	100,0
10-14 years %		40 500 12,9	50,4	39 820 12,6	49,6	80 320 12,7	100,0	45 600 11,2	49,4	46 760 11,3	50,6	92 360 11,2	100,0
15-19 years %		35 649 11,4	48,4	38 049 12,0	51,6	73 698 11,7	100,0	43 080 10,5	50,0	43 040 10,4	50,0	86 120 10,5	100,0
0-19 years %		165 340 52,7	49,5	168 392 53,2	50,5	333 732 52,9	100,0	195 720 47,9	50,0	195 480 47,3	50,0	391 200 47,6	100,0
20-64 years %		142 665 45,4	50,0	142 697 45,1	50,0	285 362 45,3	100,0	202 680 49,7	49,4	207 320 50,2	50,6	410 000 49,9	100,0
65+ years %		6 084 1,9	53,9	5 194 1,7	46,1	11 278 1,8	100,0	9 780 2,4	48,6	10 340 2,5	51,4	20 120 2,5	100,0
TOTAL %		314 089 100,0	49,8	316 283 100,0	50,2	630 372 100,0	100,0	408 180 100,0	49,7	413 140 100,0	50,3	821 320 100,0	100,0

TABLE 4.1 (cont.)

Age	Area	1970						1980					
		M	%	F	%	T	%	M	%	F	%	T	%
Blacks													
0-4 years	White	581 775	49,7	587 819	50,3	1 169 594	100,0	672 740	50,2	668 220	49,8	1 340 960	100,0
	%	49,7		48,6		48,7		40,2		40,5		40,3	
	Self-gov.	612 346		621 206		1 233 592		656 120		646 560		1 302 680	100,0
	%	51,3		51,4		51,3		39,2		39,1		39,2	
	Indep.							343 432	50,5	336 471	49,5	679 900	100,0
	%							20,6		20,4		20,5	
	Total	1 194 121	49,7	1 209 065	50,3	2 403 186	100,0	1 672 293	50,3	1 651 251	49,7	3 323 546	100,0
	%	16,9		15,6		16,2		16,1		15,8		15,9	
5-9 years	White	518 301	49,8	521 946	50,2	1 040 247	100,0	575 720	49,8	580 820	50,2	1 156 540	100,0
	%	46,2		46,4		46,3		39,5		40,0		39,8	
	Self-gov.	602 356	50,0	602 013	50,0	1 204 369	100,0	553 900	50,2	550 080	49,8	1 103 980	100,0
	%	53,8		53,6		53,7		38,0		37,9		37,9	
	Indep.							328 241	50,6	320 326	49,4	648 567	100,0
	%							22,5		22,1		22,3	
	Total	1 120 657	49,9	1 123 957	50,1	2 244 616	100,0	1 457 861	50,1	1 451 226	49,9	2 909 087	100,0
	%	15,8		14,5		15,1		14,0		13,8		13,9	

TABLE 4.1 (cont.)

Age	Area	1970						1980					
		M	%	F	%	T	%	M	%	F	%	T	%
Blacks													
10-14 years	White	452 206	49,8	456 569	50,2	908 775	100,0	485 540	49,9	486 960	50,1	972 500	100,0
	%	45,5		45,4		45,4		38,7		38,8		38,8	
	Self-gov.	542 591	49,7	548 987	50,3	1 091 578	100,0	465 920	49,9	467 020	50,1	932 940	100,0
	%	54,5		54,6		54,6		37,2		37,2		37,2	
	Indep.							302 782	50,2	300 219	49,8	603 001	100,0
	%							24,1		24,0		24,0	
	Total	994 797	49,7	1 085 556	50,3	2 000 353	100,0	1 254 242	50,0	1 254 199	50,0	2 508 441	100,0
	%	14,1		13,0		13,5		12,0		12,0		12,0	
15-19 years	White	413 897	51,0	397 357	49,0	511 254	100,0	539 020	52,8	480 940	47,2	1 019 960	100,0
	%	56,0		49,1		52,4		48,4		43,2		45,8	
	Self-gov.	325 666	44,1	412 047	55,9	737 713	100,0	383 120	49,0	399 460	51,0	782 580	100,0
	%	49,0		50,9		47,6		34,4		35,9		35,1	
	Indep.							192 201	45,3	231 936	54,7	424 137	100,0
	%							17,2		20,9		19,1	
	Total	739 563	47,7	809 404	52,3	1 548 967	100,0	1 114 341	50,0	1 112 336	50,0	2 226 677	100,0
	%	10,4		10,5		10,5		10,7		10,6		10,7	

TABLE 4.1 (cont.)

Age	Area	1970						1980					
		M	%	F	%	T	%	M	%	F	%	T	%
Blacks													
0-19 years	White %	1 966 179 48,6	50,0	1 963 691 47,3	50,0	3 929 870 47,9	100,0	2 272 320 41,3	50,6	2 216 940 40,5	49,4	4 489 960 40,9	100,0
	Self-gov. %	2 082 959 51,4	48,8	2 184 293 52,7	51,2	4 267 252 52,1	100,0	2 059 060 37,5	50,0	2 063 120 37,7	50,0	4 122 180 37,6	100,0
	Indep. %							1 166 657 21,2	49,5	1 185 952 21,8	50,5	2 355 679 21,5	100,0
	Total %	4 049 138 57,2	49,4	4 147 984 53,6	50,6	8 197 122 55,3	100,0	5 498 737 52,8	50,1	5 469 012 52,2	49,9	10 967 749 52,5	100,0
20-64 years	White %	1 981 195 70,6	55,3	1 598 765 48,7	44,7	3 579 960 58,8	100,0	3 197 920 69,3	59,6	2 167 160 47,1	40,4	5 365 080 58,2	100,0
	Self-gov. %	826 535 29,4	32,9	1 685 381 51,3	67,1	2 511 916 41,2	100,0	948 700 20,5	39,0	1 483 050 32,3	61,0	2 432 100 26,4	100,0
	Indep. %							470 190 10,2	33,2	946 857 20,6	66,8	1 417 047 15,4	100,0
	Total %	2 807 730 39,6	46,1	3284 146 42,4	53,9	6 091 876 41,1	100,0	4 616 810 44,4	50,1	6 597 417 43,9	49,9	9 214 227 44,1	100,0

TABLE 4.1 (cont.)

Age	Area	1970						1980					
		M	%	F	%	T	%	M	%	F	%	T	%
Blacks													
65+ years	White	99 669	47,9	108 270	52,1	207 939	100,0	126 060	47,3	140 320	52,7	266 300	100,0
	%	44,1		35,0		38,9		42,9		34,2		37,8	
	Self-gov.	126 305	38,6	200 690	61,4	326 995	100,0	91 320	36,8	156 740	63,2	248 060	100,0
	%	55,9		65,0		66,1		31,0		38,2		35,2	
	Indep.							76 792	40,4	113 002	59,6	189 854	100,0
	%							26,1		27,6		27,0	
	Total	225 974	42,2	308 960	57,8	534 934	100,0	294 172	41,8	410 122	58,2	704 294	100,0
	%	3,2		4,0		3,6		2,8		3,9		3,4	
0+ years	White	4 047 043	52,4	3 670 726	47,6	7 717 769	100,0	5 597 200	55,3	4 524 420	44,7	10 121 420	100,0
	%	57,1		47,4		52,1		53,8		43,2		48,4	
	Self-gov.	3 035 799	42,7	4 070 364	57,3	7 106 163	100,0	3 099 080	45,6	3 703 260	54,4	6 802 340	100,0
	%	42,9		52,6		47,9		29,8		35,3		32,6	
	Indep.							1 713 639	43,2	2 248 871	56,8	3 962 510	100,0
	%							16,4		21,5		19,0	
GRAND TOTAL		7 082 842	47,8	7 741 090	52,2	14 823 932	100,0	10 409 719	49,8	10 476 551	50,2	20 886 270	100,0
%		100,0		100,0		100,0		100,0		100,0		100,0	

Sources:
- South African Statistics 1980 RSA Department of Statistics (1980) Population Population Census 1970: Age pp.1.22-1.24.
- South African Statistics 1982 RSA Central Statistical Services Population Age 1980 pp.1.18-1.20.
- Statistical Review of Black Development Part II Independent States (TBVC countries) 1981 BENSO.

4.1.1 Comment on Table 4.1

(1) White population

The percentage compositions for boys and girls in the age group 0-19 years for 1970 differed little from those for 1980. There were still a few more boys than girls, but the difference in 1980 was smaller than in 1970. The total percentage composition in this age group decreased from 40,4 % in 1970 to 36,5 % in 1980. Because this part of the population is regarded as the potential school-going age group, both the preceding decrease of 3,9 % (40,4 - 36,5) for the period 1970 to 1980, and the increase in numbers of this age group, 127 977 for the period 1970 to 1980 should be taken into account in future planning and the provision of educational facilities for White pupils.

The percentage compositions for the age group 20-64 years increased from 53,0 % in 1970 to 55,6 % in 1980. This proves that the White population is getting older. In 1970 there were 0,3 % more men than women, and by 1980 this difference had increased to 1,2 %.

There were more women than men in the age group 65+ years both in 1970 and 1980. For men and women together the 6,6 % representation in 1970 had increased to 7,9 % in 1980.

(2) Coloured population

For the group 0-19 years neither 1970 nor 1980 showed great differences between boys and girls. In 1970 there were 0,6 % more girls than boys, and in 1980 0,2 % more boys than girls. In 1970 56,8 % of the total Coloured population fell in this age group and in 1980 this had decreased to 51,4 %. This decrease of 5,4 % (56,8 - 51,4), in conjunction with the actual increase of 176 994 in the total number of persons in this age group over the same period, should be kept in mind for the planning and provision of educational facilities for Coloured pupils in the future.

For the 20-64 year-old group there were more women than men both in 1970 and 1980: 2,8 % in 1970 and 2,2 % in 1980. In 1970 40,1 % of the Coloured population fell in this age group and in 1980 this increased to 45,4 %. If this trend continues in the future, it will mean that the Coloured population is ageing.

The percentage representation of Coloureds in the age group 65+ years is considerably lower than that for Whites. For 1970 and 1980 the percentages remained virtually the same. There were more women than men in this group.

(3) Asian population

For the age group 0-19 years the 52,9 % composition of 1970 dropped to 47,6 % in 1980, i.e. a decrease of 5,3 % that, together with the increase in numbers of 57 468, could have a considerable effect on the future planning and provision of educational facilities for Asian pupils.

The size of the group 20-64 years increased from 45,3 % in 1970 to 49,9 % in 1980. The Asian population is therefore also ageing. In 1970 there were only a few more men than women, while in 1980 the opposite was true.

The 65+ years age group increased from 1,8 % in 1970 to 2,5 % in 1980. In 1970 there were a few more men than women, and in 1980 the position was reversed.

(4) Black population

(a) Total Black population in Southern Africa

- For the group 0-19 years there were 1,2 % fewer boys than girls in 1970 and 0,2 % more boys than girls in 1980. In 1980 there were 2,8 % fewer 0-19 year-olds than in 1970. Although this decrease of 2,8 is the smallest if compared with those of the other three population groups (3,9 - Whites, 5,4 - Coloureds, 5,3 - Asians), it will have to be taken into account in conjunction with the increase in numbers of 2 770 627 (10 967 749 - 8 197 122) in the planning and provision of educational facilities for Black pupils in the future.

- In the age group 20-64 years there were 7,8 % more women than men in 1970, and 0,2 % fewer women than men in 1980. In 1980 an increase of 3,0 % was recorded in the size of this age group, compared with the percentage in 1970. If this trend were to continue, it would also mean that the Black population is steadily ageing.

- For some reason or other the number of Blacks who were 65 years and older decreased by 0,2 % between 1970 and 1980. In both 1970 and 1980 the number of women exceeded the number of men in this age group.

- As far as the Black population is concerned, there were 4,4 % more women than men in 1970, and by 1980 this difference had dropped to 0,4 %. In 1970 52,1 % of the total Black population lived in the White area and 47,9 % in the national states. In 1980 48,4 % of the Blacks lived in the White area, 32,6 % in self-governing national states and 19,0 % in independent states. The latter two areas therefore housed 51,6 % of the Black population in 1980.

(b) Black population in the White area

- In 1970 the number of boys and girls in the group 0-19 years were almost equal and in 1980 there were 0,6 % more boys than girls.

- In the 20-64 year-old group there were 10,6 % more men than women in 1970 and in 1980 this percentage was 19,2 %.

- In 1970 the group of 65+ years had 4,2 % more women than men, and by 1980 this number had risen to 5,4 %.

- In 1970 the total Black population in the White area comprised 4,8 % more men than women, and by 1980 this majority had risen to 10,6 %.

(c) Black population in national states

- Because there were no independent states in 1970, the self-governing national and independent states are combined for the 1980 figures.

- In the group 0-19 years there were 2,4 % more girls than boys in 1970, and by 1980 there were only 0,3 % more boys than girls.

- In 1970 there were 34,2 % more women than men in the age group 20-64 years, but this percentage dropped to 27,8 % in 1980.

- In the group 65+ years there were 22,8 % more women than men in 1970 and in 1980 this figure was 23,8 %.

With regard to the total Black population in the national states, there were 14,6 % more women than men in 1970, whereas this majority dropped to 11,2 % in 1980.

It should naturally be borne in mind that the area of the self-governing national and independent states was considerably larger in 1980 than it had been in 1970, owing to the consolidation of land. These changed borders necessarily had to affect the numbers of Blacks in the above states and in the White area.

4.2 CUMULATIVE PERCENTAGE AGE DISTRIBUTION OF VARIOUS POPULATION GROUPS IN 1960, 1970 AND 1980

In this regard the reader is referred to Diagrams 4.1, 4.2 and 4.3.

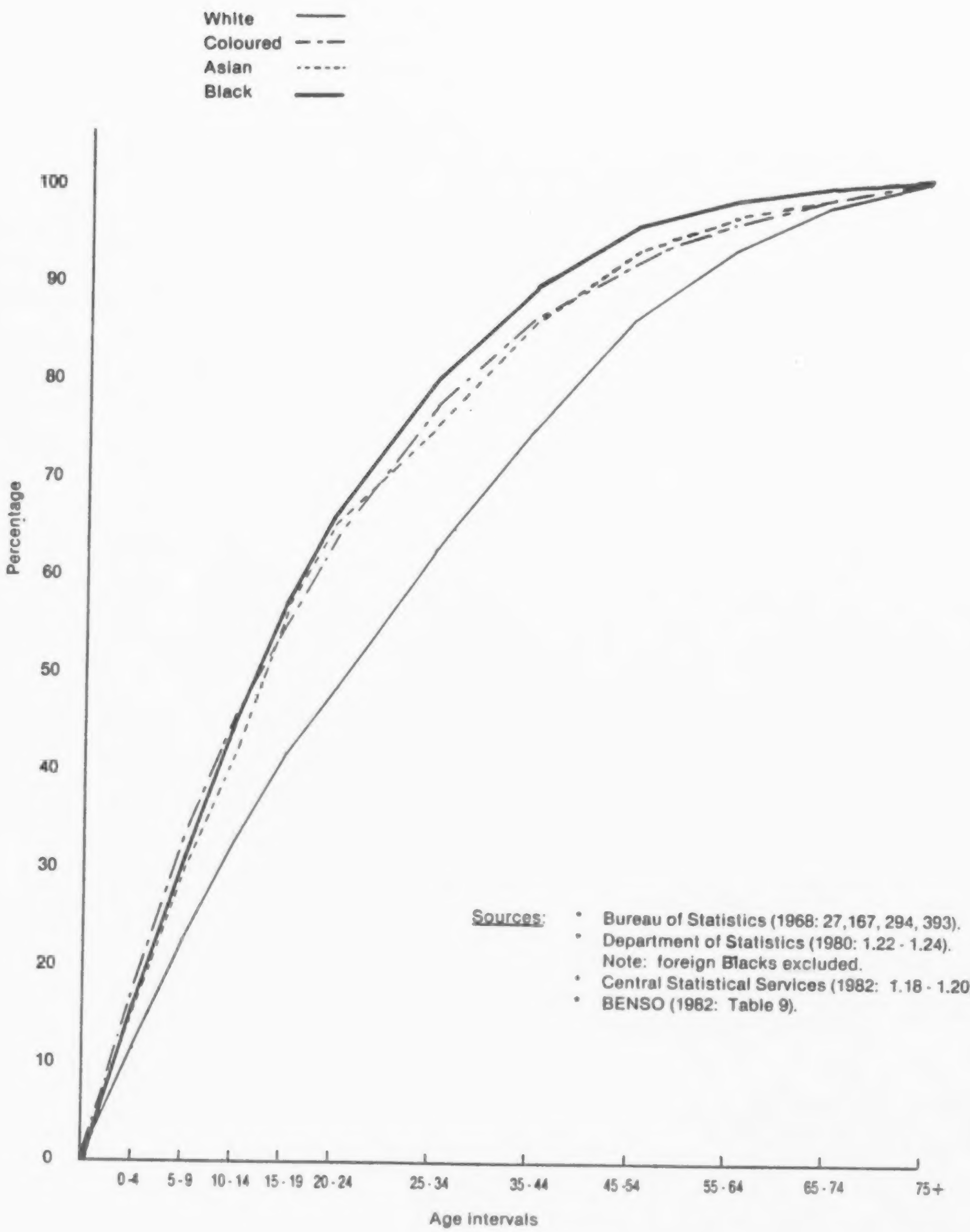
Comment:

- Compared with the other three population groups, the White population was the oldest one in 1960, 1970 and 1980.

- In 1960 the Asians were the youngest population group, but towards 1970 the percentage compositions of the numbers in the age group 0-24 years dropped considerably. Compared with the Coloured population, the Asian group is ageing much more rapidly.

- The Asian graph is gradually corresponding more and more with the one for Whites.

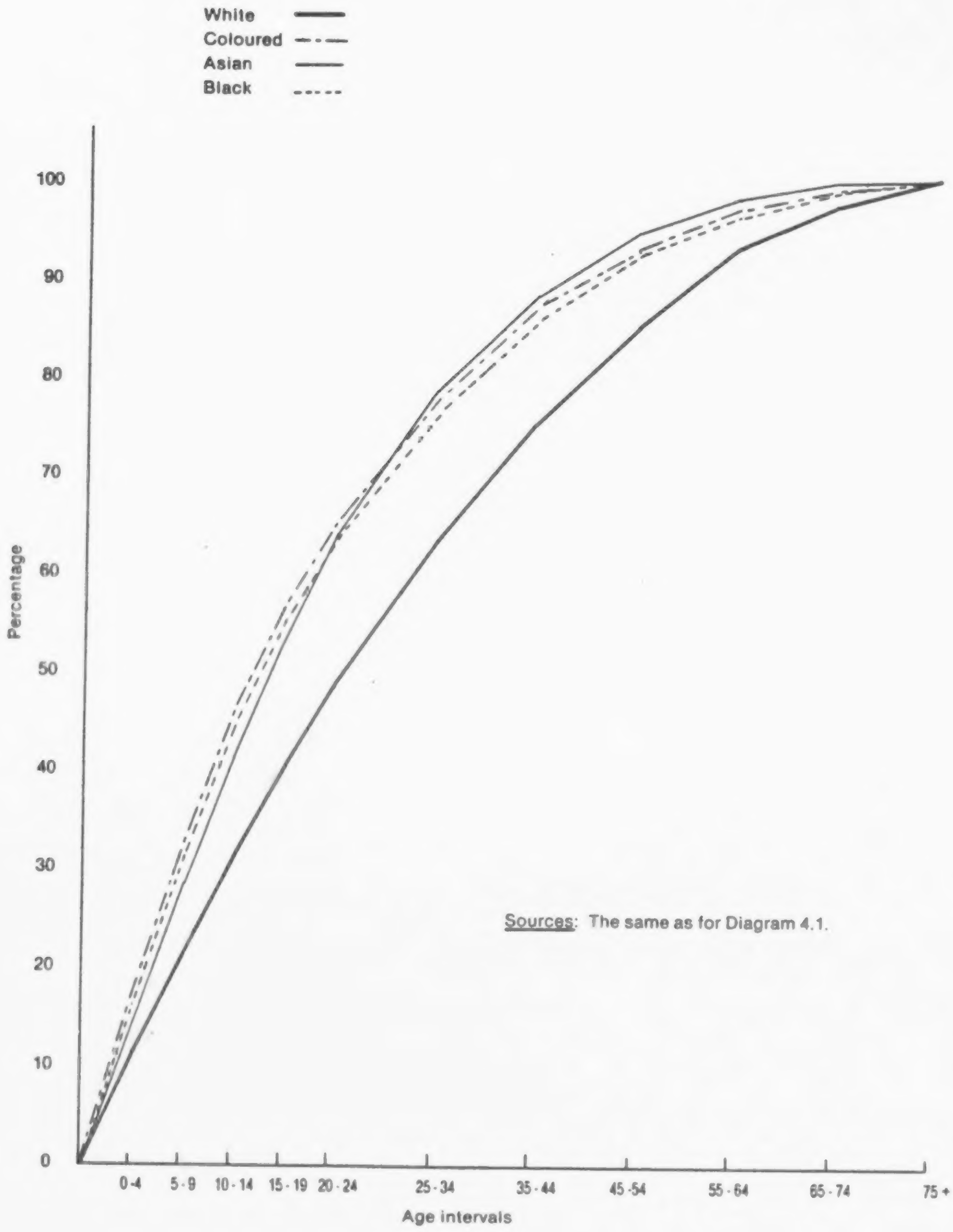
DIAGRAM 4.1
CUMULATIVE PERCENTAGE OF AGE DISTRIBUTION OF VARIOUS POPULATION GROUPS IN 1960



Sources:
- Bureau of Statistics (1968: 27,167, 294, 393).
- Department of Statistics (1980: 1.22 - 1.24).
  Note: foreign Blacks excluded.
- Central Statistical Services (1982: 1.18 - 1.20).
- BENSO (1982: Table 9).

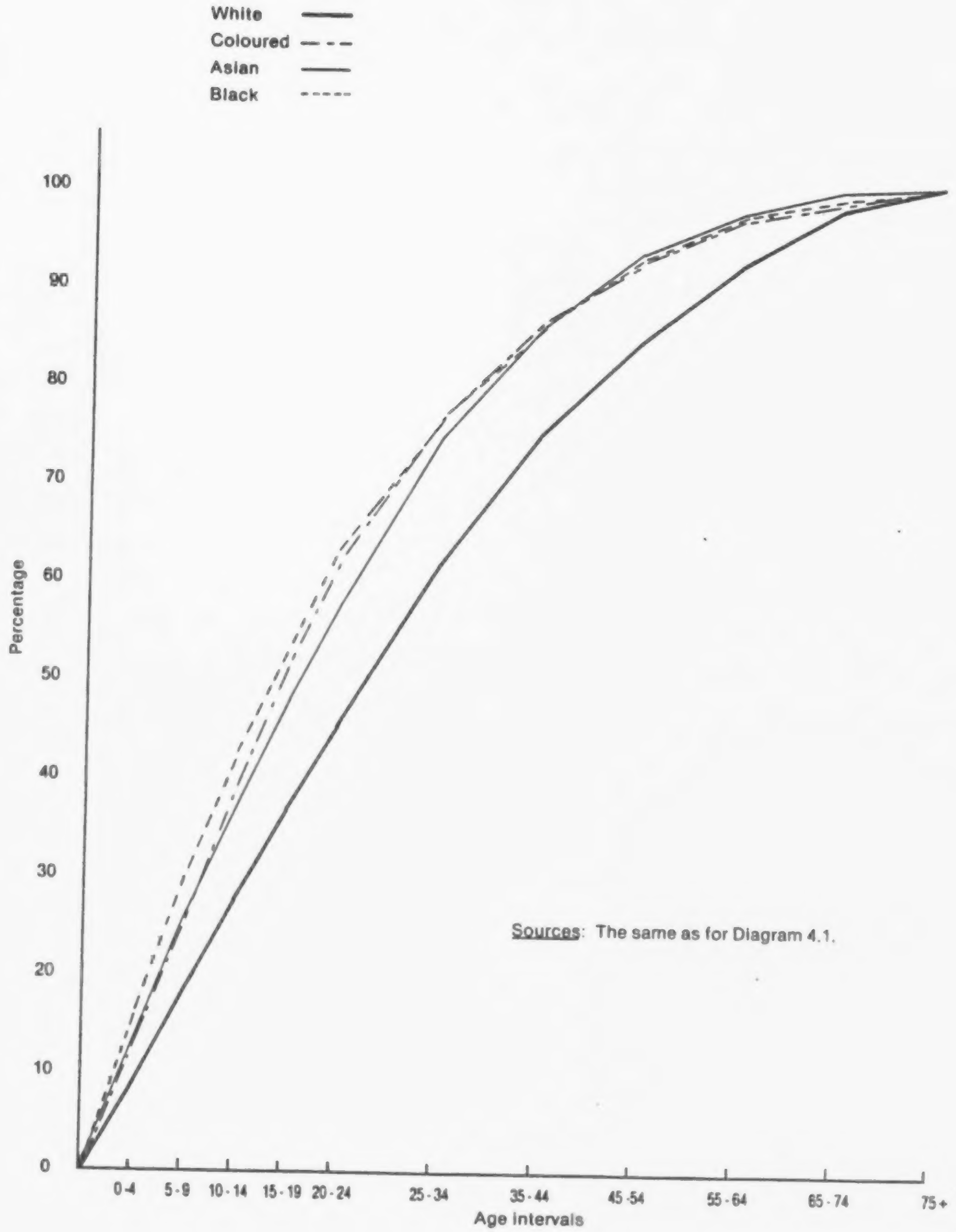
DIAGRAM 4.2

CUMULATIVE PERCENTAGE OF AGE DISTRIBUTION OF VARIOUS POPULATION GROUPS IN 1970



Sources: The same as for Diagram 4.1.

DIAGRAM 4.3
CUMULATIVE PERCENTAGE OF AGE DISTRIBUTION OF VARIOUS POPULATION GROUPS IN 1980



Sources: The same as for Diagram 4.1.

- The section of the graph representing the younger Coloured age groups tends to correspond more with the graph for Whites in 1970 and 1980. If this trend were to continue, it would signify that the Coloured population is also ageing.

- The section of the graph representing the younger Black age groups in 1980 is the furthest removed from the graph for Whites. This indicates that the Black population is rapidly becoming the youngest of the four population groups in Southern Africa.

CHAPTER 5

POPULATION PROJECTIONS

5.1 INFORMATION NEEDED FOR FORMULATING PROJECTIONS

Demographic figures obtained in previous censuses, as well as the latest and the expected total population figures of Southern Africa's four main population groups, are of primary importance for placing educational statistics in the proper perspective. Knowledge of fertility, mortality (deaths), external migration and the mobility of the various inland population groups is essential for planning purposes and for making important projections concerning the total population, the different population groups, the school population and the manpower of the future.

The Central Statistical Services published specific birth and death rates for the White, Coloured and Asian populations in 1982 (see Table 3.6) and these can be very useful for projections and future planning. It should be borne in mind that the Central Statistical Services only published estimates of the Black population because Black births and deaths are not always registered. These estimates also appear in Table 3.6.

Before 1980 various institutions and persons accepted the 1970 census as point of departure for their projections. These institutions and persons include the HSRC, the Central Statistical Services and Prof. J.L. Sadie of the University of Stellenbosch. In this Chapter 5 these projections are discussed under two sub-headings:

Population projections for each of the four population groups in Southern Africa, and

Population projections for each of the four population groups according to age distribution and sex.

5.2 VARIABLE FACTORS THAT HAMPER THE CALCULATION OF PROJECTIONS

The projection of a population is extremely difficult and complicated because several variables have to be kept in mind. The most important single factor is definitely fertility. Other variable factors that hamper projections are, inter alia, mortality, migration, socio-economic factors and government policy. These factors are related to important and controversial issues such as family planning, unemployment, urbanization, depopulation of the rural areas, squatting, resettlement of industries and the implementation of a formulated, coherent industrial development strategy on a regional basis.

Lötter (1981: 12) stated the following on population projections:

"All known population projections undertaken before 1970 appear to have underestimated the size of the South African population to be expected by the year 2000. It seems likely that at least some projections undertaken since 1970 have overestimated the population by the year 2000, or at least overestimated the size of some of the individual population groups at the close of the century." (Translation.)

Van Tonder and Mostert (1980: 1) pointed out that the last official projection of the four population groups in the RSA was made in 1976 by the Department of Statistics in conjunction with various experts.

According to several authors on the subject there has since then been a sharp drop in fertility for all the population groups, which the previous projection had not taken into account. Official statistics show that the birthrate of the Coloureds and Asians during the period 1970 to 1977 dropped by 25,3 % and 24,4 % respectively. The corresponding decline in the White birthrate was 26,7 %. No official fertility statistics are available for Blacks, but surveys by the HSRC (Lötter and Van Tonder (1976); Van Tonder (1978); Van Wyk (1980)) reveal that this population group's birthrate also decreased, although not to the same extent as in the case of Whites, Coloureds and Asians.

In view of the above information Van Tonder and Mostert do not find it strange that the fertility trends foreseen by the HSRC (1973), Sadie (1973) and the Department of Statistics (1976) are already much higher than expected.

Lever (1978) also pointed out that the population projections made in the RSA were generally not very successful. It appears that all projections made before 1965 underestimated the population. According to Van Tonder and Mostert (1980: 1) the Tomlinson Commission for example predicted a Black population of 21,4 million for the year 2000, whereas this population group had already reached the 15,5 million mark in 1970. In an early projection by Sadie (1950) the size of the Black population was estimated at 18,9 million in the year 2000, while Badenhorst projected a population of 21,5 million for the same year.

However, projections that were made after 1965 tended to overestimate future population figures. The projections by Sadie (1973), the HSRC (1973) and the Department of Statistics (1976) (which had all been mentioned earlier) respectively indicated, for example, a Black population of 37,3, 33,7 and 34,7 million in the year 2000. It now appears as if these figures are too high.

Overestimating and underestimating population figures occurs not only in South Africa, but also elsewhere in the world. However population projections are essential for planning purposes.

Mostert, Van Eeden and Van Tonder (1973: 1) state the following on population projections:

The actual population figures could differ from the projected figures as the projections have to extend further into the future. Reasonably accurate projections can be made at the very most for ten to fifteen years into the future.

To make meaningful projections, according to Sadie (1973: 4), it is necessary to have reliable statistics on the following: basic population, division according to sex and age and the three elements determining population growth and change: fertility, mortality and migration - also sex and age. To enable the researcher to make reasonable estimates of the possible future course of the above, he must also have access to accurate information on the population's movements in the past.

Sadie (1973: 4) also pointed out that

- the census, birth, mortality and migration statistics were reasonably reliable for Whites, but not to the same extent for Asians, Coloureds and Blacks;

- he had made the reasonable assumption in his projections that the registration of deaths by Asians and Coloureds and that of migration among Asians was complete; and

- no data on Blacks were available that could be accepted as correct.

According to the results of his projections (based on a continuation of the demographic trends at the time), Sadie (1973) expected

- the growth rate of the White population to decline steadily (with or without immigration) (Sadie 1973: 12);

- the decrease in growth rate of the Asian population, which had started in the fifties, to continue (Sadie 1973: 19);

- a gradual drop in the Coloured growth rate after 1970, but that the size of the Coloured population would definitely increase significantly unless birth control were implemented on a much larger scale (Sadie 1973: 25), and

- that the drop in the Black growth rate would continue, but at a slower tempo owing to a lower mortality rate. The Blacks' gross reproduction rate would, according to Sadie, still be higher than that of the other population groups (Sadie 1973: 33-36).

5.3 COMMENT ON THE TOTALS OF A FEW POPULATION PROJECTIONS FOR THE VARIOUS POPULATION GROUPS

A number of institutions and persons used the 1970 and other censuses as points of departure for population projections. The projections of these institutions and persons for 1980 only and only the totals for the four different population groups were included in Table 5.1 with a view to comparing the way in which the projections and estimates concerned correspond and differ. In addition these projections are also compared with the most recent population census figures in 1980 that were released by the Central Statistical Services in 1982. These institutions and persons include: the HSRC (having made 7 projections); Sadie (one projection) and the Central Statistical Services (one projection and one midyear estimate).

TABLE 5.1

COMPARISON BETWEEN POPULATION PROJECTIONS AND ESTIMATES WITH 1970 CENSUS AS POINT OF DEPARTURE FOR RESPECTIVE POPULATION GROUPS FOR 1980

		Whites	Coloureds	Asians	Blacks	Total
Dept. of Statistics: Population Census 1970 (1980)		3 773 282	2 050 699	630 372	15 339 975	21 794 328
HSRC (1973):	Low fertility	4 584 800	2 641 100	802 300	19 979 600	28 007 800
	Medium fertility	4 597 700	2 649 800	805 600	20 081 500	28 134 600
	High fertility	4 609 200	2 653 600	808 000	20 136 200	28 207 000
Sadie (1973):	Excluding immigrants	4 433 000	2 818 000	825 000	20 639 000	28 715 000
	Including immigrants	4 762 000	2 818 000	825 000	20 639 000	29 044 000
Dept. of Statistics (1976)		4 397 780	2 721 000	828 840	20 364 000	28 311 620
HSRC (1980):	Low fertility	4 496 430	2 538 870	813 050	19 471 630	27 319 980
	High fertility	4 498 510	2 539 080	813 210	19 642 990	27 493 790
HSRC (1981):	Low fertility	4 499 000	2 539 000	813 000	19 643 000	27 494 000
	High fertility	4 397 000	2 721 000	829 000	20 365 000	28 312 000
Central Statistical Services (1982) Midyear estimate		4 538 000	2 621 000	824 000	*17 003 000	*24 986 000
Central Statistical Services Populaton Census 1980 (1982)		4 528 100	2 612 780	*821 320	*16 923 760	*24 885 960
		4 528 100	2 612 780	821 320	20 886 270	28 848 470

* Independent states (Transkei, Bophuthatswana, Venda) excluded — their total population is 3 962 510.

Sources:
- Department of Statistics (1980, p. 1.14).
- Sadie (1973).
- Mostert, Van Eeden and Van Tonder (1973).
- Department of Statistics (April 1976).
- Van Tonder and Mostert (1980).
- Lötter: RSA 2000, 3(2) (1981, p.13).
- Central Statistical Services (1982, pp.1.4 and 1.5 (xv).
- Central Statistical Services (1980, p.1.9).
- BENSO (1982, Table 9).

Comment on Table 5.1:

Whites: The HSRC used low, medium and high fertility projections. Projections made during 1980 and 1981 were too low, while those made during 1973 were too high. The 1976 projection by the Department of Statistics' was much too low and the Central Statistical Services' midyear estimate made during ing 1982 was somewhat high. Sadie gave two projections of figures, one without immigration and the other with immigration. The first was too low and the second too high.

Coloureds: Some projections were too high and others too low. Only the Central Statistical Services' midyear estimate made during 1982 was reasonably close, but still somewhat high. Sadie's figures were far too high.

Asians: Four of the ten projections were too high, whereas the rest were too low. The Central Statistical Services' midyear estimate made during 1982 was closest, though still somewhat high. Sadie's figures were too high again.

Blacks: To facilitate comparison, the population figures for the three independent states (Transkei, Bophuthatswana and Venda) for 1980 were included. All projections for Blacks (except the 1982 midyear estimate) were too low. The midyear estimate made during 1982 by the Central Statistical Services was close but still somewhat high.

Total population: All projections, with the exception of Sadie's, were too low. Sadie's projections were all too high. The Central Statistical Services' midyear estimate made during 1982 was the closest.

By using the 1980 census figures with 100 as base and reducing the ten projections in Table 5.1 according to that norm, the author found that only the midyear estimate made during 1982 by the Central Statistical Services could be reduced to 10 because it had only minimal deviations. All the other computed figures were either smaller or larger than 100 and varied between 93 and 108 (see Table 5.2).

The accuracy of the projection for the years after 1980 cannot be determined according to the above procedure because the actual population growth rate for the future is naturally not known.

5.4 A FEW REASONS WHY PROJECTIONS SHOW DEVIATIONS

The question can be raised why population projections, even those that are limited to the near future, show deviations. The following are possible reasons why the above population projections deviate from the 1980 census figures:

After 1970 the fertility of all the population groups dropped sharply, a phenomenon that apparently was not taken into account when the projections were prepared. During the period 1970 to 1980

TABLE 5.2
CONVERSION OF POPULATION PROJECTIONS FOR 1980 WITH 1980 POPULATION CENSUS FIGURES ON THE BASIS OF 100

	Whites	Coloureds	Asians	Blacks	Total
Based on the 1980 census	100	100	100	100	100
Sadie (1973)	105 *98	108	101	99	101 *100
HSRC (1973):					
Low fertility	101	101	98	96	97
Medium fertility	102	101	98	96	98
High fertility	102	102	98	96	98
Dept. of Statistics (1973)	97	104	100	98	98
HSRC (1980):					
Low fertility	99	97	99	93	95
High fertility	99	97	99	94	95
HSRC (1981):					
Low fertility	99	97	99	94	95
High fertility	97	104	101	98	98
Central Statistical Services (1982): Midyear estimate	100	100	100	100	100

* Excluding immigrants.

Source: Table 5.1.

the natural growth rate of the White, Coloured and Asian populations respectively dropped by 42,25 %, 15,07 % and 30,12 % (see Table 3.8). With regard to birthrates per 1 000 of the Whites, Coloureds and Asians, the percentage drops were (respectively) 28,88 %, 22,56 % and 26,61 % for the period 1970 to 1980 (see Table 3.7). No official fertility and birthrates are available for the Black population. Only constant estimates are used (see Table 3.6).

According to Table 3.1 the percentage of children under the age of one in the White, Coloured and Asian populations each decreased in proportion to their total population figures during the period 1960 to 1980, while the corresponding figures for the Black population showed an increase during the same period:

In the case of Whites: a 30,44 % decrease;
Coloureds: a 37,47 % decrease;
Asians: a 24,29 % reduction, and
Blacks: a 6,67 % increase over twenty years.

The means a year were as follows:

Whites: 1,52 % decrease;
Coloureds: 1,87 % decrease;
Asians: 1,22 % decrease, and
Blacks: 0,33 % increase.

The decline in the birthrates of Whites, Coloureds and Asians and the decrease in the number of children, under the age of one, of the Whites, Coloureds and Asians during the period 1970 to 1980 can be attributed to factors such as political instability in some form or other, rises in the cost of living, housing shortages, inflation, economic factors with varying effects, compulsory military service (which delays entrance to the labour market), and the growing number of women joining the labour market (which interrupts and delays the development of a family). Most of these factors apply not only to Whites, but to a great extent also to Coloureds and Asians, and to a lesser extent to Blacks as well.

5.5 EFFECT OF DECLINING BIRTHRATES ON POPULATION

Although the above factors have an immediate effect on the birthrates and numbers of children under the age of one and four, this phenomenon, if it were to continue, would have a great effect on the age composition of the total population groups in 10-15 years' time. This would mean that the potential school population (0-19 years), in proportion to the total population, will continue to decline, whereas the rest of the population (20 years and older) will continue to increase. Table 3.1 unquestionably shows that this process has already been under way for the period 1970 to 1980 - not only for Whites, Coloureds and Asians, but also for Blacks. The relevant percentages are summarized in Table 5.3.

5.6 POPULATION PROJECTIONS ACCORDING TO AGE DISTRIBUTION AND SEX PER POPULATION GROUP FOR 1980

Projections according to age distribution and sex were also made by the same institutions and persons mentioned in Paragraph 5.3 above, namely Sadie (1973), the HSRC (1973 - low, medium, high), the Department of Statistics (1976) and the HSRC (1980 - low and high). Separate tables were compiled for each of the four population groups with regard to the age intervals 0-4, 5-9, 10-14, 15-19, 0-19, 20-64 and 65+ years, with a view to obtaining a clear picture and complete figures, particularly of the potential school population. This information appears in Tables 5.4 (Whites), 5.5 (Coloureds), 5.6 (Asians) and 5.7 (Blacks). In Table 5.7 the total Black population, that includes that of the independent states (Transkei, Bophuthatswana and Venda), was taken into account.

With the aid of the 1980 census data, the figures concerning each of the different projections reflected in the four tables above were reduced to a base of 100 and summarized in Table 5.8.

The information in Table 5.8 was systematized and summarized in Table 5.9 to obtain a better overall picture of how accurate each of the particular 1980 projections was and what possible deviations (above average, below average, too low, too high) each showed in respect of the different population groups, especially with reference to the age group intervals concerned.

TABLE 5.3

COMPARISON BETWEEN PERCENTAGE COMPOSITIONS OF POTENTIAL SCHOOL POPULATION (0-19 YEARS) AND THE REST OF THE TOTAL POPULATION (20 YEARS AND OLDER) FOR 1960, 1970 AND 1980

Population group	Year	0-19 years %	20 years and older %
Total population	1960	49,51	50,49
	1970	52,73	47,27
	1980	49,76	50,24
Whites	1960	41,19	58,81
	1970	40,42	59,58
	1980	36,51	63,49
Coloureds	1960	54,70	45,30
	1970	56,83	43,17
	1980	51,38	48,62
Asians	1960	56,34	43,66
	1970	52,94	47,06
	1980	47,64	52,36
Blacks	1960	50,83	49,17
	* 1970	55,29	44,71
	** 1980	52,51	47,49

* Excluding self-governing states.

** Including independent and self-governing states.

Source : Table 3.1.

TABLE 5.4

POPULATION PROJECTIONS ACCORDING TO AGE DISTRIBUTION: WHITES

White population	1970			1980		
	M	F	T	M	F	T
0-4 years: Census figures (1980)	208 895	201 125	410 020	199 460	192 300	391 760
Sadie (1973)	213 330	204 440	417 770	268 980	257 150	526 130
HSRC: Low (1973)	208 900	201 200	410 100	244 600	239 300	483 900
Medium (1973)	208 900	201 200	410 100	250 000	244 500	494 500
High (1973)	208 900	201 200	410 100	255 100	249 500	504 600
DOS (1976)	208 980	201 210	410 190	253 570	243 300	496 870
HSRC: Low (1980)				197 350	189 780	387 130
High (1980)				198 330	190 720	389 050
5-9 years: Census figures (1980)	200 431	192 212	392 643	219 460	210 040	429 500
Sadie (1973)	200 150	191 480	391 630	246 290	236 020	482 310
HSRC: Low (1973)	200 500	192 200	392 700	234 800	228 400	463 200
Medium (1973)	200 500	192 200	392 700	236 000	229 600	465 600
High (1973)	200 500	192 200	392 700	236 700	230 300	467 000
DOS (1976)	200 510	192 250	392 760	235 800	226 480	462 280
HSRC: Low (1980)				221 490	212 530	434 020
High (1980)				221 490	212 540	434 030
10-14 years Census figures (1980)	194 368	185 833	380 201	215 500	209 960	425 460
Sadie (1973)	193 050	186 200	379 250	225 420	216 660	442 080
HSRC: Low (1973)	193 100	186 200	379 300	216 600	208 800	425 400
Medium (1973)	193 100	186 200	379 300	216 600	208 800	425 400
High (1973)	193 100	186 200	379 300	216 600	208 800	425 400
DOS (1976)	194 420	185 860	380 280	221 310	213 370	434 680
HSRC: Low (1980)				216 130	208 840	424 970
High (1980)				216 130	208 840	424 970

TABLE 5.4 (cont.)

White population			1985			1990		
			M	F	T	M	F	T
0-4 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	287 740	274 790	562 530	303 620	289 660	593 280
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	251 300	248 700	500 000	258 400	255 000	513 400
	Medium	(1973)	262 100	259 500	521 600	275 200	271 800	547 000
	High	(1973)	272 700	269 900	542 600	291 900	288 100	580 000
	DOS	(1976)	274 760	263 570	538 330	292 020	280 070	572 090
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	189 180	181 970	371 150	175 310	168 660	343 970
	High	(1980)	197 320	189 800	387 120	196 340	188 900	385 240
5-9 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	275 970	264 170	540 140	294 800	281 880	576 680
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	245 800	243 100	488 900	253 000	252 800	505 800
	Medium	(1973)	251 100	248 300	499 400	263 700	263 500	527 200
	High	(1973)	256 100	253 300	509 400	274 100	273 900	544 000
	DOS	(1976)	260 470	250 110	510 580	281 680	270 400	552 080
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	196 360	189 460	385 820	188 360	181 640	370 000
	High	(1980)	197 330	190 400	387 730	196 470	189 460	385 930
10-14 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	251 440	241 320	492 760	281 180	269 490	550 670
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	239 000	232 600	471 600	250 100	247 300	497 400
	Medium	(1973)	240 100	233 700	473 800	255 300	252 500	507 800
	High	(1973)	240 800	234 400	475 200	260 300	257 500	517 800
	DOS	(1976)	241 290	231 880	473 170	265 970	255 500	521 470
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	220 540	212 160	432 700	195 570	189 170	384 740
	High	(1980)	220 550	212 170	432 720	196 540	190 110	386 650

TABLE 5.4 (cont.)

White population			1995			2000		
			M	F	T	M	F	T
0-4 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	319 540	305 330	624 870	336 390	321 440	657 830
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	261 900	258 000	519 900	266 500	261 000	527 500
	Medium	(1973)	287 400	283 000	570 400	300 300	294 200	594 500
	High	(1973)	312 400	307 700	620 100	336 100	329 400	665 500
	DOS	(1976)	306 900	294 280	601 180	322 370	309 050	631 420
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	174 300	167 740	342 040	174 920	168 330	343 250
	High	(1980)	195 160	187 800	382 960	187 460	180 400	367 860
5-9 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	310 790	296 840	607 630	326 690	312 500	639 190
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	260 600	259 500	520 100	264 700	262 300	527 000
	Medium	(1973)	277 300	276 100	553 400	289 900	287 300	577 200
	High	(1973)	293 700	292 500	586 200	314 700	312 000	626 700
	DOS	(1976)	299 010	286 960	585 970	313 990	301 250	615 240
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	174 660	168 340	343 000	173 710	167 370	341 080
	High	(1980)	195 610	188 540	384 150	194 490	187 390	381 880
10-14 years:	Cencus figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	300 090	287 270	587 360	316 050	302 220	618 270
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	257 400	257 100	514 500	265 100	263 700	528 800
	Medium	(1973)	268 000	267 800	535 800	281 800	280 300	562 100
	High	(1973)	278 400	278 200	556 600	298 100	296 700	594 800
	DOS	(1976)	287 260	275 820	563 080	304 650	292 420	597 070
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	187 650	181 390	369 040	174 040	168 150	342 190
	High	(1980)	195 730	189 210	384 940	194 920	188 320	383 240

TABLE 5.4 (cont.)

White population			1970			1980		
			M	F	T	M	F	T
15-19 years:	Census figures	(1980)	174 050	167 789	341 839	206 920	199 040	405 960
	Sadie	(1973)	175 200	167 500	342 700	208 870	200 920	409 790
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	166 700	165 500	332 200	207 400	199 200	406 600
	Medium	(1973)	166 700	165 500	332 200	207 400	199 200	406 600
	High	(1973)	166 700	165 500	332 200	207 400	199 200	406 600
	DOS	(1976)	174 100	167 820	341 920	209 730	201 510	411 240
	HSRC: Low	(1980)				205 600	197 930	403 530
	High	(1980)				205 610	197 940	403 550
0-19 years:	Census figures	(1980)	777 744	746 959	1 524 703	841 340	811 340	1 652 680
	Sadie	(1973)	781 730	749 620	1 531 350	949 560	910 750	1 860 310
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	769 200	745 100	1 514 300	903 400	875 700	1 779 100
	Medium	(1973)	769 200	745 100	1 514 300	910 000	882 100	1 792 100
	High	(1973)	769 200	745 100	1 514 300	915 800	887 800	1 803 600
	DOS	(1976)	778 010	747 140	1 525 150	920 410	884 660	1 805 070
	HSRC: Low	(1980)				840 570	809 080	1 649 650
	High	(1980)				841 560	810 040	1 651 600
20-64 years:	Census figures	(1980)	999 757	999 601	1 999 358	1 274 000	1 245 160	2 519 160
	Sadie	(1973)	1 023 120	1 019 030	2 042 150	1 288 360	1 265 330	2 553 690
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	1 009 900	1 002 900	2 012 800	1 237 900	1 232 300	2 470 200
	Medium	(1973)	1 009 900	1 002 900	2 012 800	1 237 900	1 232 300	2 470 200
	High	(1973)	1 009 900	1 002 900	2 012 800	1 237 900	1 232 300	2 470 200
	DOS	(1976)	1 030 520	1 016 110	2 046 630	1 311 180	1 266 670	2 577 850
	HSRC: Low	(1980)				1 260 520	1 234 950	2 495 470
	High	(1980)				1 260 550	1 235 010	2 495 560

TABLE 5.4 (cont.)

White population		1935			1990		
		M	F	T	M	F	T
15-19 years: Census figures	(1980)						
Sadie	(1973)	229 080	220 890	449 970	255 090	245 590	500 680
HSRC: Low	(1973)	218 600	211 800	430 400	241 000	235 700	476 700
Medium	(1973)	218 600	211 800	430 400	242 200	236 800	479 000
High	(1973)	218 600	211 800	430 400	242 900	237 500	480 400
DOS	(1976)	225 180	217 300	442 480	245 230	235 850	481 080
HSRC: Low	(1980)	214 980	208 410	423 390	219 430	211 770	431 200
High	(1980)	214 990	208 410	423 400	219 440	210 780	430 220
0-19 years: Census figures	(1980)						
Sadie	(1973)	1 044 230	1 001 170	2 045 400	1 134 690	1 086 620	2 221 310
HSRC: Low	(1973)	954 700	936 200	1 890 900	1 002 500	990 800	1 993 300
Medium	(1973)	971 900	953 300	1 925 200	1 036 400	1 024 600	2 061 000
High	(1973)	988 200	969 400	1 957 600	1 069 200	1 057 000	2 126 200
DOS	(1976)	1 001 700	962 860	1 964 560	1 084 900	041 820	2 126 720
HSRC Low	(1980)	821 060	792 000	1 613 060	778 670	751 240	1 529 910
High	(1980)	830 190	800 780	1 630 970	808 790	779 250	1 588 040
20-64 years: Census figures	(1980)						
Sadie	(1973)	437 650	1 407 600	2 845 250	1 592 550	1 561 710	3 154 260
HSRC: Low	(1973)	373 600	1 362 500	2 736 100	1 504 200	1 498 500	3 002 700
Medium	(1973)	373 600	1 362 500	2 736 100	1 504 200	1 498 500	3 002 700
High	(1973)	373 600	1 362 500	2 736 100	1 504 200	1 498 500	3 002 700
DOS	(1976)	468 670	1 408 640	2 877 210	1 630 900	1 557 830	3 188 730
HSRC: Low	(1980)	356 670	1 330 980	2 687 650	1 453 000	1 430 120	2 883 120
High	(1980)	366 700	1 331 010	2 687 710	1 453 050	1 430 190	2 883 240

TABLE 5.4 (cont.)

White population			1995			2000		
			M	F	T	M	F	T
15-19 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	284 860	273 820	558 680	303 800	291 580	595 380
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	252 200	250 500	502 700	259 700	260 300	520 000
	Medium	(1973)	257 500	255 700	513 200	270 300	271 000	541 300
	High	(1973)	262 400	260 700	523 100	280 600	281 400	562 000
	DOS	(1976)	269 990	259 510	529 500	291 390	279 890	571 280
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	194 650	188 860	383 510	186 820	181 140	367 960
	High	(1980)	195 610	189 800	385 410	194 860	188 940	383 800
0-19 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	1 215 280	1 163 260	2 378 540	1 282 930	1 227 740	2 510 670
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	1 032 100	1 025 100	2 057 200	1 056 000	1 047 300	2 103 300
	Medium	(1973)	1 090 200	1 082 600	2 172 800	1 142 300	1 132 800	2 275 100
	High	(1973)	1 146 900	1 139 100	2 286 000	1 229 500	1 219 500	2 449 000
	DOS	(1976)	1 163 160	1 116 570	2 279 730	1 232 400	1 182 610	2 415 010
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	731 260	706 330	1 437 590	709 490	684 990	1 394 480
	High	(1980)	782 110	755 350	1 537 460	771 730	745 050	1 516 780
20-64 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	1 762 950	1 734 230	3 497 180	1 953 930	1 927 590	3 881 520
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	1 659 800	1 653 600	3 313 400	1 814 700	1 812 300	3 617 000
	Medium	(1973)	1 661 000	1 654 800	3 315 800	1 821 500	1 818 700	3 640 200
	High	(1973)	1 661 700	1 655 400	3 327 100	1 827 100	1 824 300	3 651 400
	DOS	(1976)	1 805 010	1 718 120	3 523 130	1 992 190	1 893 480	3 885 670
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	1 547 760	1 526 970	3 074 730	1 608 540	1 595 040	3 203 580
	High	(1980)	1 547 780	1 527 020	3 074 800	1 609 550	1 596 010	3 205 560

TABLE 5.4 (cont.)

White population			1970			1980		
			M	F	T	M	F	T
65+ years:	Census figures	(1980)	104 312	144 909	249 221	150 060	206 200	356 260
	Sadie	(1973)	103 000	145 900	248 900	142 420	205 680	348 100
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	103 000	146 000	249 000	139 400	196 100	335 500
	Medium	(1973)	103 000	146 000	249 000	139 400	196 100	335 500
	High	(1973)	103 000	146 000	249 000	139 400	196 100	335 500
	DOS	(1976)	104 370	144 890	249 260	155 950	203 150	359 100
	HSRC: Low	(1980)				153 060	198 250	351 310
	High	(1980)				153 070	198 280	351 350
TOTAL:	Census figures	(1980)	1 881 813	1 891 469	3 773 282	2 265 400	2 262 700	4 528 100
	Sadie	(1973)	1 907 850	1 914 550	3 822 400	2 380 340	2 381 760	4 762 100
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	1 882 200	1 893 700	3 775 900	2 280 800	2 304 000	4 584 800
	Medium	(1973)	1 882 200	1 893 700	3 775 900	2 287 300	2 310 400	4 597 700
	High	(1973)	1 882 200	1 893 700	2 775 900	2 293 100	2 316 100	4 609 200
	DOS	(1976)	1 912 900	1 908 140	3 821 040	2 387 540	2 354 480	4 742 020
	HSRC: Low	(1980)				2 254 150	2 242 280	4 496 430
	High	(1980)				2 255 180	2 243 330	4 498 510

TABLE 5.4 (cont.)

White population			1985			1990		
			M	F	T	M	F	T
65+ years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	154 230	230 260	384 490	167 480	254 960	422 440
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	156 300	217 600	373 900	190 300	239 800	430 100
	Medium	(1973)	156 300	217 600	373 900	190 300	239 800	430 100
	High	(1973)	156 300	217 600	373 900	190 300	239 800	430 100
	DOS	(1976)	175 940	228 480	404 420	196 790	254 100	450 890
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	168 110	218 670	386 780	183 130	238 200	421 330
	High	(1980)	168 140	218 690	386 830	183 140	238 210	421 350
TOTAL:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	2 635 110	2 639 030	5 274 140	2 894 720	2 903 290	5 798 010
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	2 484 800	2 516 500	5 001 300	2 697 100	2 729 200	5 426 300
	Medium	(1973)	2 502 000	2 533 500	5 035 500	2 731 000	2 762 900	5 493 900
	High	(1973)	2 518 300	2 549 700	5 068 000	2 763 800	2 795 400	5 559 200
	DOS	(1976)	2 646 210	2 599 980	5 246 190	2 912 590	2 853 750	5 766 340
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	2 345 840	2 341 650	4 687 490	2 414 800	2 419 560	4 834 360
	High	(1980)	2 355 010	2 350 480	4 705 490	2 444 960	2 448 650	4 893 610

TABLE 5.4 (cont.)

White population		1995			2000		
		M	F	T	M	F	T
65+ years : Census figures	(1980)						
Sadie	(1973)	180 370	279 490	459 860	198 020	299 580	497 600
HSRC: Low	(1973)	202 400	258 800	461 200	219 900	279 600	499 500
Medium	(1973)	202 400	258 800	461 200	219 900	279 600	499 500
High	(1973)	202 400	258 800	461 200	219 900	279 600	499 500
DOS	(1976)	216 570	278 070	494 640	239 170	303 310	542 480
HSRC:Low	(1980)	196 580	256 490	453 070	211 930	275 190	487 120
High	(1980)	196 610	256 500	453 110	211 930	275 200	487 130
TOTAL: Census figures	(1980)						
Sadie	(1973)	3 158 600	3 176 980	6 335 580	3 434 880	3 454 910	6 889 790
HSRC: Low	(1973)	2 894 400	2 937 400	5 831 800	3 091 000	3 139 300	6 230 300
Medium	(1973)	2 953 600	2 996 100	5 949 700	3 183 600	3 231 100	6 414 700
High	(1973)	3 011 200	3 053 200	6 064 400	3 276 800	3 323 300	6 600 100
DOS	(1976)	3 184 740	3 112 760	6 297 500	3 463 760	3 379 400	6 843 160
HSRC: Low	(1980)	2 475 600	2 489 790	4 965 390	2 529 960	2 555 220	5 085 180
High	(1980)	2 526 500	2 538 870	5 065 370	2 593 210	2 616 260	5 209 470

Sources:
- Department of Statistics (1980), pp.1.22-1.24).
- Central Statistical Services (1982, pp.1.18-1.20).
- Sadie (1973).
- Mostert, Van Eeden and Van Tonder (1973).
- Department of Statistics (1976).
- Van Tonder and Mostert (1980).

DOS: Department of Statistics.

TABLE 5.5

POPULATION PROJECTIONS ACCORDING TO AGE DISTRIBUTION: COLOUREDS

Coloured population	1970			1980		
	M	F	T	M	F	T
0-4 years: Census figures (1980)	172 352	174 156	346 508	165 620	165 920	331 540
Sadie (1973)	182 170	183 060	365 230	236 400	235 500	471 900
HSRC: Low (1973)	172 300	174 300	346 600	218 500	217 800	436 300
Medium (1973)	172 300	174 300	346 600	221 500	220 700	442 200
High (1973)	172 300	174 300	346 600	224 800	224 000	448 800
DOS (1976)	176 020	176 650	352 670	215 250	213 960	429 210
HSRC: Low (1980)	176 020	176 650	352 670	162 560	161 700	324 260
High (1980)	176 020	176 650	352 670	162 560	161 710	324 270
5-9 years: Census figures (1980)	161 864	162 931	324 795	173 620	171 120	344 740
Sadie (1973)	161 860	162 750	324 610	202 900	202 480	405 380
HSRC: Low (1973)	161 600	162 800	324 400	178 200	159 100	337 300
Medium (1973)	161 600	162 800	324 400	179 700	160 400	340 100
High (1973)	161 600	162 800	324 400	180 900	161 400	342 300
DOS (1976)	161 980	163 040	325 020	179 410	179 030	358 440
HSRC: Low (1980)	161 980	163 040	325 020	158 790	157 800	316 590
High (1980)	161 980	163 040	325 020	158 800	157 800	316 600
10-14 years: Census figures (1980)	137 742	138 165	275 907	173 720	172 040	345 760
Sadie (1973)	137 530	137 840	275 370	177 310	178 520	355 830
HSRC: Low (1973)	136 900	137 800	274 700	156 100	158 900	315 000
Medium (1973)	136 900	137 800	274 700	156 100	158 900	315 000
High (1973)	136 900	137 800	274 700	156 100	158 900	315 000
DOS (1976)	137 850	138 270	276 120	168 180	169 600	337 780
HSRC:Low (1980)	137 850	138 270	276 120	164 700	165 960	330 660
High (1980)	137 850	138 270	276 120	164 710	165 970	330 680
15-19 years: Census figures (1980)	107 190	111 066	218 256	159 620	160 800	320 420
Sadie (1973)	110 930	111 080	222 010	159 520	161 140	320 660
HSRC: Low (1973)	108 800	111 100	219 900	158 700	160 500	319 200
Medium (1973)	108 800	111 100	219 900	158 700	160 500	319 200
High (1973)	108 800	111 100	219 900	158 700	160 500	319 200
DOS (1976)	111 340	111 150	222 490	159 880	161 650	321 530
HSRC: Low (1980)	111 340	111 150	222 490	156 990	158 850	315 840
High (1980)	111 340	111 150	222 490	157 000	158 860	315 860

TABLE 5.5 (cont.)

Coloured population			1985			1990		
			M	F	T	M	F	T
0-4 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	268 300	268 000	536 300	299 800	299 800	599 600
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	242 400	243 700	486 100	257 900	259 000	516 900
	Medium	(1973)	248 400	249 800	498 200	265 000	266 100	531 100
	High	(1973)	253 500	254 900	508 400	274 000	275 200	549 200
	DOS	(1976)	250 750	248 630	499 380	285 460	282 450	567 910
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	173 910	173 070	346 980	179 160	178 320	357 480
	High	(1980)	180 050	179 180	359 230	191 740	190 840	382 580
5-9 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	232 550	231 660	464 210	264 400	264 100	528 500
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	204 300	206 800	411 100	227 600	232 500	460 100
	Medium	(1973)	207 100	209 600	416 700	233 300	238 200	471 500
	High	(1973)	210 100	212 700	422 800	238 100	243 100	481 200
	DOS	(1976)	209 190	207 860	417 050	245 090	242 470	487 560
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	156 450	156 140	312 590	168 220	168 080	336 300
	High	(1980)	156 460	156 140	312 600	174 160	174 020	348 180
10-14 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	201 800	201 650	403 450	231 400	230 820	462 220
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	175 800	157 200	333 000	201 700	204 500	406 200
	Medium	(1973)	177 200	158 500	335 700	204 400	207 300	411 700
	High	(1973)	178 400	159 500	337 900	207 400	210 400	417 800
	DOS	(1976)	178 600	178 410	357 010	208 400	207 260	415 660
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	156 660	156 100	312 760	154 530	154 680	309 210
	High	(1980)	156 670	156 110	312 780	154 530	154 690	309 220
15-19 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	176 030	177 720	353 750	200 500	200 800	401 300
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	153 800	156 900	310 700	173 300	155 400	328 700
	Medium	(1973)	153 800	156 900	310 700	174 800	156 600	331 400
	High	(1973)	153 800	156 900	310 700	175 900	157 700	333 600
	DOS	(1976)	167 220	169 040	336 260	177 810	177 950	355 760
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	162 350	164 060	326 410	154 590	154 540	309 130
	High	(1980)	162 350	164 060	326 410	154 600	154 540	309 140

TABLE 5.5 (cont.)

Coloured population	1995			2000		
	M	F	T	M	F	T
0-4 years: Census figures (1980)						
Sadie (1973)	329 300	328 600	657 900	357 500	357 000	714 500
HSRC: Low (1973)	257 900	258 600	516 500	256 600	257 200	513 800
Medium (1973)	269 200	270 100	539 300	273 300	273 900	547 200
High (1973)	281 400	282 300	563 700	291 200	291 900	583 100
DOS (1976)	311 030	307 060	618 090	330 440	325 500	655 940
HSRC: Low (1980)	174 180	173 370	347 550	160 560	159 760	320 320
High (1980)	192 140	191 240	383 380	184 370	183 450	367 820
5-9 years: Census figures (1980)						
Sadie (1973)	296 200	295 600	591 800	326 000	325 100	651 100
HSRC: Low (1973)	243 400	248 200	491 600	244 500	248 900	493 400
Medium (1973)	250 100	255 000	505 100	255 300	259 900	515 200
High (1973)	258 600	263 700	522 300	266 900	271 700	538 600
DOS (1976)	280 600	276 510	557 110	307 450	301 740	609 190
HSRC: Low (1980)	174 290	174 120	348 410	170 210	170 150	340 360
High (1980)	186 530	186 340	372 870	187 760	187 690	375 450
10-14 years: Census figures (1980)						
Sadie (1973)	263 250	263 300	526 550	295 000	294 800	589 800
HSRC: Low (1973)	224 900	230 200	455 100	240 700	246 000	486 700
Medium (1973)	230 500	235 900	466 400	247 300	252 800	500 100
High (1973)	235 200	240 800	476 000	255 700	261 400	517 100
DOS (1976)	244 350	241 910	486 260	279 960	276 020	555 980
HSRC: Low (1980)	166 340	166 660	333 000	172 540	172 850	345 390
High (1980)	172 210	172 540	344 750	184 650	184 980	369 630
15-19 years: Census figures (1980)						
Sadie (1973)	230 000	230 000	460 000	261 830	262 460	524 290
HSRC:Low (1973)	199 100	202 400	401 500	222 200	228 000	450 200
Medium (1973)	201 800	205 100	406 900	227 700	233 700	461 400
High (1973)	204 700	208 200	412 900	232 400	238 500	470 900
DOS (1976)	207 750	206 870	414 620	243 900	241 630	485 530
HSRC: Low (1980)	152 660	153 260	305 920	164 500	165 330	329 830
High (1980)	152 660	153 270	305 930	170 310	171 160	341 470

TABLE 5.5 (cont.)

Coloured population			1970			1980		
			M	F	T	M	F	T
0-19 years:	Census figures	(1980)	579 148	586 318	1 165 466	672 580	669 880	1 342 460
	Sadie	(1973)	592 490	594 730	1 187 220	776 130	777 640	1 553 770
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	579 600	586 000	1 165 600	711 500	696 300	1 407 800
	Medium	(1973)	579 600	586 000	1 165 600	716 000	700 500	1 416 500
	High	(1973)	579 600	586 000	1 165 600	720 500	704 800	1 425 300
	DOS	(1976)	587 190	589 110	1 176 300	722 720	724 240	1 446 960
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	587 190	589 110	1 176 300	643 040	644 310	1 287 350
	High	(1980)	587 190	589 110	1 176 300	643 070	644 340	1 287 410
20-64 years:	Census figures	(1980)	399 634	422 516	822 150	579 920	605 960	1 185 880
	Sadie	(1973)	419 680	428 320	848 000	579 590	606 210	1 185 800
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	400 600	421 000	821 600	561 700	598 900	1 160 600
	Medium	(1973)	400 500	421 000	821 500	561 700	598 900	1 160 600
	High	(1973)	400 600	421 000	821 600	561 700	598 900	1 160 600
	DOS	(1976)	414 810	426 720	841 530	584 600	608 600	1 193 200
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	414 810	426 720	841 530	576 140	598 980	1 175 120
	High	(1980)	414 810	426 720	841 530	576 220	599 020	1 175 240
65 + years:	Census figures	(1980)	28 828	34 255	63 083	37 020	47 420	84 440
	Sadie	(1973)	28 290	33 560	61 850	33 520	45 530	79 050
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	27 900	33 500	61 400	31 700	40 900	72 600
	Medium	(1973)	27 900	33 500	61 400	31 700	40 900	72 600
	High	(1973)	27 900	33 500	61 400	31 700	40 900	72 600
	DOS	(1976)	27 840	35 290	63 130	36 660	44 460	81 120
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	27 470	35 290	62 760	34 340	42 060	76 400
	High	(1980)	27 470	35 290	62 760	34 350	42 080	76 430
TOTAL:	Census figures	(1980)	1 007 610	1 043 089	2 050 699	1 289 520	1 323 260	2 612 780
	Sadie	(1973)	1 040 460	1 056 610	2 097 070	1 389 240	1 429 380	2 818 620
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	1 007 800	1 040 500	2 048 300	1 305 200	1 335 900	2 641 100
	Medium	(1973)	1 007 800	1 040 500	2 048 300	1 309 600	1 340 200	2 649 800
	High	(1973)	1 007 800	1 040 500	2 048 300	1 314 100	1 344 500	2 653 600
	DOS	(1976)	1 029 840	1 051 120	2 080 960	1 343 980	1 377 300	2 721 280
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	1 029 470	1 051 120	2 080 590	1 253 520	1 285 350	2 538 870
	High	(1980)	1 029 470	1 051 120	2 080 590	1 253 640	1 285 440	2 539 080

Sources: The same as for Table 5.4.

TABLE 5.5 (cont.)

Coloured Population			1985			1990		
			M	F	T	M	F	T
0-19 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	878 680	879 030	1 757 710	996 100	994 720	1 990 820
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	776 300	764 600	1 540 900	860 500	851 400	1 711 900
	Medium	(1973)	786 500	774 800	1 561 300	877 500	868 200	1 745 700
	High	(1973)	795 800	784 000	1 579 800	895 400	886 400	1 781 800
	DOS	(1976)	805 760	803 940	1 609 700	916 760	910 130	1 826 890
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	649 370	649 370	1 298 740	656 500	655 620	1 312 120
	High	(1980)	655 530	655 490	1 311 020	675 030	674 090	1 349 120
20-64 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	687 430	726 560	1 413 990	804 950	858 520	1 663 470
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	671 300	714 300	1 385 600	769 600	819 600	1 589 200
	Medium	(1973)	671 300	714 300	1 385 600	769 600	819 600	1 589 200
	High	(1973)	671 300	714 300	1 385 600	769 600	819 600	1 589 200
	DOS	(1976)	701 420	732 020	1 433 440	821 540	858 080	1 679 620
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	683 570	713 490	1 397 060	789 920	827 430	1 617 350
	High	(1980)	683 590	713 540	1 397 130	789 940	827 470	1 617 410
65 + years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	36 680	52 580	89 260	40 650	60 950	101 600
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	36 000	44 800	80 800	41 400	50 800	92 200
	Medium	(1973)	36 000	44 800	80 800	41 400	50 800	92 200
	High	(1973)	36 000	44 800	80 800	41 400	50 800	92 200
	DOS	(1976)	41 560	50 060	91 620	48 720	57 610	106 330
	HSRC:Low	(1980)	38 300	47 190	85 490	44 130	54 740	98 870
	High	(1980)	38 320	47 210	85 530	44 140	54 750	98 890
TOTAL:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	1 602 790	1 658 170	3 260 960	1 841 700	1 914 190	3 755 890
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	1 483 400	1 523 600	3 007 000	1 671 400	1 721 700	3 393 100
	Medium	(1973)	1 493 400	1 533 800	3 027 500	1 688 300	1 738 700	3 427 000
	High	(1973)	1 503 000	1 543 100	3 046 100	1 706 300	1 756 700	3 463 000
	DOS	(1976)	1 548 840	1 586 020	3 134 860	1 787 020	1 825 820	3 612 840
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	1 371 240	1 410.050	2 781 290	1 490 550	1 537 790	3 028 340
	High	(1980)	1 377 440	1 416 240	2 793 680	1 509 110	1 556 310	3 065 420

TABLE 5.5 (cont.)

Coloured Population			1995			2000		
			M	F	T	M	F	T
0-19 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	1 118 750	1 117 500	2 236 250	1 240 330	1 239 360	2 479 690
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	925 300	939 400	1 864 700	964 000	980 100	1 944 100
	Medium	(1973)	951 600	966 100	1 917 700	1 003 600	1 020 300	2 023 900
	High	(1973)	979 900	995 000	1 974 900	1 046 200	1 063 500	2 109 700
	DOS	(1976)	1 043 730	1 032 350	2 076 080	1 161 750	1 144 890	2 306 640
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	667 470	667 410	1 334 880	667 810	668 090	1 335 900
	High	(1980)	703 540	703 390	1 406 930	727 090	727 280	1 454 370
20-64 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	938 040	1 005 530	1 943 570	1 092 670	1 172 220	2 264 890
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	880 200	914 600	1 794 800	1 003 700	1 046 500	2 050 200
	Medium	(1973)	881 600	915 900	1 797 500	1 007 700	1 050 500	2 058 200
	High	(1973)	882 700	916 900	1 799 600	1 011 800	1 054 500	2 066 300
	DOS	(1976)	979 100	986 080	1 965 180	1 101 610	1 134 790	2 236 400
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	882 570	923 180	1 805 750	964 950	1 008 610	1 973 560
	High	(1980)	882 620	923 200	1 805 820	964 980	1 008 640	1 973 620
65 + years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	46 350	73 240	119 590	54 640	90 590	145 230
	HSRC: low	(1973)	48 400	61 300	109 700	58 700	76 300	135 000
	Medium	(1973)	48 400	61 300	109 700	58 700	76 300	135 000
	High	(1973)	48 400	61 300	109 700	58 700	76 300	135 000
	DOS	(1976)	57 410	69 240	126 650	69 920	52 710	122 630
	HSRC:Low	(1980)	51 310	66 190	117 500	61 760	82 120	143 880
	High	(1980)	51 340	66 210	117 550	61 780	82 130	143 910
TOTAL:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	2 103 140	2 196 270	4 299 410	2 387 640	2 502 170	4 889 810
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	1 853 700	1 915 300	3 769 000	2 026 600	2 102 900	4 129 500
	Medium	(1973)	1 881 500	1 943 300	3 824 800	2 070 200	2 146 900	4 217 100
	High	(1973)	1 911 000	1 973 100	3 884 100	2 116 800	2 194 100	4 310 900
	DOS	(1976)	2 050 240	2 087 670	4 137 910	2 333 280	2 365 390	4 698 670
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	1 601 350	1 656 780	3 258 130	1 694 520	1 758 820	3 453 340
	High	(1980)	1 637 500	1 692 800	3 330 300	1 753 850	1 818 050	3 571 900

DOS : Department of Statistics.

TABEL 5.6

POPULATION PROJECTIONS ACCORDING TO AGE DISTRIBUTION: ASIANS

Asian population			1970			1980		
			M	F	T	M	F	T
0-4 years:	Census figures	(1980)	45 517	46 662	92 179	51 840	51 060	102 900
	Sadie	(1973)	45 870	45 330	91 200	56 100	55 500	111 600
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	45 500	46 700	92 200	55 600	54 500	110 100
	Medium	(1973)	45 500	46 700	92 200	56 600	55 600	112 200
	High	(1973)	45 500	46 700	92 200	57 500	56 400	113 900
	DOS	(1976)	46 210	46 000	92 210	60 200	59 080	119 280
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	46 210	46 000	92 210	51 860	51 110	102 970
	High	(1980)	46 210	46 000	92 210	51 860	51 120	102 980
5-9 years:	Census figures	(1980)	43 674	43 861	87 535	55 200	54 620	109 820
	Sadie	(1973)	43 330	43 060	86 390	50 300	49 840	100 140
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	43 300	43 100	86 400	50 400	49 500	99 900
	Medium	(1973)	43 300	43 100	86 400	51 000	50 000	101 000
	High	(1973)	43 300	43 100	86 400	51 400	50 400	101 800
	DOS	(1976)	43 840	43 740	87 580	52 620	51 710	104 330
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	43 840	43 740	87 580	55 220	54 640	109 860
	High	(1980)	43 840	43 740	87 580	55 230	54 650	109 880
10-14 years:	Census figures	(1980)	40 500	39 820	80 320	45 600	46 760	92 360
	Sadie	(1973)	40 710	40 250	80 960	45 380	44 940	90 320
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	40 700	39 500	80 200	44 200	45 500	89 700
	Medium	(1973)	40 700	39 500	80 200	44 200	45 500	89 700
	High	(1973)	40 700	39 500	80 200	44 200	45 500	89 700
	DOS	(1976)	40 210	40 130	80 340	45 540	45 420	90 960
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	40 210	40 130	80 340	45 120	45 140	90 260
	High	(1980)	40 210	40 130	80 340	45 130	45 150	90 280
15-19 years:	Census figures	(1980)	35 649	38 049	73 698	43 080	43 040	86 120
	Sadie	(1973)	38 120	37 670	75 790	42 990	42 800	85 790
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	36 300	37 700	74 000	42 800	42 700	85 500
	Medium	(1973)	36 300	37 700	74 000	42 800	42 700	85 500
	High	(1973)	36 300	37 700	74 000	42 800	42 700	85 500
	DOS	(1976)	38 110	38 060	76 170	43 490	43 460	86 950
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	38 110	38 060	76 170	42 780	42 860	85 640
	High	(1980)	38 110	38 060	76 170	42 780	42 860	85 640

TABLE 5.6 (cont.)

Asian population			1985			1990		
			M	F	T	M	F	T
0-4 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	59 800	59 300	119 100	62 500	61 900	124 400
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	57 100	56 200	113 300	58 900	57 900	116 800
	Medium	(1973)	58 600	57 700	116 300	60 900	59 900	120 800
	High	(1973)	60 200	59 300	119 500	63 100	62 100	125 200
	DOS	(1976)	65 300	64 060	129 360	68 740	67 410	136 150
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	51 310	50 510	101 820	49 890	49 060	98 950
	High	(1980)	53 310	52 480	105 790	54 320	53 410	107 730
5-9 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	55 820	55 300	111 120	59 600	59 140	118 740
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	53 900	53 100	107 000	55 500	54 900	110 400
	Medium	(1973)	54 900	54 100	109 000	57 000	56 400	113 400
	High	(1973)	55 700	54 900	110 600	58 600	57 900	116 500
	DOS	(1976)	59 670	58 610	118 280	64 800	63 620	128 420
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	51 380	50 690	102 070	50 860	50 210	101 070
	High	(1980)	51 380	50 700	102 080	52 850	52 170	105 020
10-14 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	50 170	49 750	99 920	55 710	55 230	110 940
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	50 100	49 100	99 200	53 500	52 800	106 300
	Medium	(1973)	50 600	49 700	100 300	54 500	53 800	108 300
	High	(1973)	51 000	50 100	101 100	55 300	54 600	109 900
	DOS	(1976)	52 460	51 580	104 040	59 530	58 490	118 020
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	54 680	54 210	108 890	50 940	50 360	101 300
	High	(1980)	54 690	54 220	108 910	50 950	50 360	101 310
15-19 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	45 240	44 840	90 080	50 050	49 670	99 720
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	43 900	45 200	89 100	49 700	48 900	98 600
	Medium	(1973)	43 900	45 200	89 100	50 300	49 400	99 700
	High	(1973)	43 900	45 200	89 100	50 600	49 800	100 400
	DOS	(1976)	45 390	45 300	90 690	52 320	51 470	103 790
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	44 640	44 760	89 400	54 170	53 820	107 990
	High	(1980)	44 640	44 760	89 400	54 170	53 820	107 990

TABLE 5.6 (cont.)

Asian population			1995			2000		
			M	F	T	M	F	T
0-4 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	64 700	64 000	128 700	67 570	67 140	134 710
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	59 400	58 400	117 800	60 200	59 100	119 300
	Medium	(1973)	62 500	61 400	123 900	64 500	63 300	127 800
	High	(1973)	65 900	64 700	130 600	67 700	66 500	134 200
	DOS	(1976)	71 010	69 600	140 610	73 930	72 440	146 370
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	49 080	48 210	97 290	47 620	46 740	94 360
	High	(1980)	55 250	54 280	109 530	55 690	54 660	110 350
5-9 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	62 400	61 830	124 230	64 600	63 970	128 570
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	57 400	56 800	114 200	58 200	57 400	115 600
	Medium	(1973)	59 400	58 700	118 100	61 200	60 400	121 600
	High	(1973)	61 600	60 900	122 500	64 500	63 700	128 200
	DOS	(1976)	68 290	67 010	135 300	70 620	69 270	139 890
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	49 500	48 810	98 310	48 810	47 990	96 800
	High	(1980)	53 890	53 140	107 030	54 950	54 020	108 970
10-14 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	59 540	59 100	118 640	62 320	61 800	124 120
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	55 200	54 700	99 900	57 200	56 600	113 800
	Medium	(1973)	56 700	56 200	112 900	59 100	58 500	117 600
	High	(1973)	58 200	57 700	115 900	61 300	60 700	122 000
	DOS	(1976)	64 670	63 510	128 180	68 190	66 930	135 120
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	50 490	49 930	100 420	49 200	48 590	97 790
	High	(1980)	52 470	51 890	104 360	53 560	52 900	106 460
15-19 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	55 610	55 180	110 790	59 440	59 050	118 490
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	53 200	52 600	105 800	54 900	54 400	109 300
	Medium	(1973)	54 200	53 600	107 800	56 400	55 900	112 300
	High	(1973)	55 000	54 300	109 300	57 900	57 400	115 300
	DOS	(1976)	59 410	58 400	117 810	68 190	63 450	131 640
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	50 520	50 050	100 570	50 130	49 680	99 810
	High	(1980)	50 520	50 050	100 570	52 090	51 630	103 720

TABLE 5.6 (cont.)

Asian population			1970			1980		
			M	F	T	M	F	T
0-19 years:	Census figures	(1980)	165 340	168 392	333 732	195 720	195 480	391 200
	Sadie	(1973)	168 030	166 310	334 340	194 770	193 080	387 850
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	165 800	167 000	332 800	193 000	192 200	385 200
	Medium	(1973)	165 800	167 000	332 800	194 600	193 800	388 400
	High	(1973)	165 800	167 000	332 800	195 900	195 000	390 900
	DOS	(1976)	168 370	167 930	336 300	201 850	199 670	401 520
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	168 370	167 930	336 300	194 980	193 750	388 730
	High	(1980)	168 370	167 930	336 300	195 000	193 780	388 780
20-64 years:	Census figures	(1980)	142 665	142 697	285 362	202 680	207 320	410 000
	Sadie	(1973)	153 330	150 990	304 320	207 480	209 860	417 340
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	141 200	142 900	284 100	195 800	202 400	398 200
	Medium	(1973)	141 200	142 900	284 100	195 800	202 400	398 200
	High	(1973)	141 200	142 900	284 100	195 800	202 400	398 200
	DOS	(1976)	146 800	147 960	294 760	201 500	207 680	409 180
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	146 800	147 960	294 760	199 120	204 390	403 510
	High	(1980)	146 800	147 960	294 760	199 160	204 450	403 610
65+ years:	Census figures	(1980)	6 084	5 194	11 278	9 780	10 340	20 120
	Sadie	(1973)	6 580	5 770	12 350	9 680	10 090	19 770
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	5 900	5 400	11 300	9 500	9 400	18 900
	Medium	(1973)	5 900	5 400	11 300	9 500	9 400	18 900
	High	(1973)	5 900	5 400	11 300	9 500	9 400	18 900
	DOS	(1976)	6 090	5 200	11 290	9 050	9 090	18 140
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	6 090	5 200	11 290	10 330	10 480	20 810
	High	(1980)	6 090	5 200	11 290	10 340	10 480	20 820
TOTAL:	Census figures	(1980)	314 089	316 283	630 372	408 180	413 140	821 320
	Sadie	(1973)	327 940	323 070	651 010	411 930	413 030	824 960
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	312 900	315 300	628 200	398 300	404 000	802 300
	Medium	(1973)	312 900	315 300	628 200	399 900	405 600	805 500
	High	(1973)	312 900	315 300	628 200	401 200	406 800	808 000
	DOS	(1976)	321 260	321 090	642 350	412 400	416 440	828 840
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	321 260	321 090	642 350	404 430	408 620	813 050
	High	(1980)	321 260	321 090	642 350	404 500	408 710	813 210

Sources: The same as for Table 5.4.

TABLE 5.6 (cont.)

Asian population			1985			1990		
			M	F	T	M	F	T
0-19 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	211 030	209 190	420 220	227 860	225 940	453 800
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	205 000	203 600	408 600	217 600	214 500	432 100
	Medium	(1973)	208 000	206 700	414 700	222 700	219 500	442 200
	High	(1973)	210 800	209 500	420 300	227 600	224 400	452 000
	DOS	(1976)	222 820	219 550	442 370	245 390	240 990	486 280
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	202 010	200 170	402 180	205 860	203 450	409 310
	High	(1980)	204 020	202 160	406 180	212 290	209 760	422 050
20-64 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	235 430	240 610	476 040	262 980	271 220	534 200
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	224 900	233 300	458 200	253 300	263 600	516 900
	Medium	(1973)	224 900	233 300	458 200	253 300	263 600	516 900
	High	(1973)	224 900	233 300	458 200	253 300	263 600	516 900
	DOS	(1976)	230 920	239 390	470 310	260 290	270 970	531 260
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	226 700	233 550	460 250	254 370	262 440	516 810
	High	(1980)	226 760	233 570	460 330	254 390	262 500	516 890
65+ years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	11 390	12 870	24 260	13 390	16 290	29 680
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	12 500	12 600	25 100	15 700	17 000	32 700
	Medium	(1973)	12 500	12 600	25 100	15 700	17 000	32 700
	High	(1973)	12 500	12 600	25 100	15 700	17 000	32 700
	DOS	(1976)	10 700	11 880	22 580	12 560	15 290	27 850
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	12 930	14 200	27 130	15 850	18 450	34 300
	High	(1980)	12 930	14 210	27 140	15 860	18 470	34 330
TOTAL:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	457 850	462 670	920 520	504 230	513 450	1 017 680
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	442 400	449 500	891 900	486 600	495 100	981 700
	Medium	(1973)	445 400	452 600	898 000	491 700	500 100	991 800
	High	(1973)	448 200	455 400	903 600	496 600	505 000	1 001 600
	DOS	(1976)	464 440	470 820	935 260	518 240	527 250	1 045 490
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	441 640	447 920	889 560	476 080	484 340	960 420
	High	(1980)	443 710	449 940	893 650	482 540	490 730	973 270

TABLE 5.6 (cont.)

Asian population			1995			2000		
			M	F	T	M	F	T
0-19 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	242 250	240 110	482 360	253 930	251 960	505 890
	HSRC : Low	(1973	225 200	222 500	447 700	230 500	227 500	458 000
	Medium	(1973)	232 800	229 900	462 700	241 200	238 100	479 300
	High	(1973)	240 700	237 600	478 300	251 400	248 300	499 700
	DOS	(1976)	263 380	258 520	521 900	277 330	272 090	549 420
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	199 590	197 000	396 590	195 760	193 000	388 760
	High	(1980)	212 130	209 360	421 490	216 290	213 210	429 500
20-64 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	292 320	303 780	596 100	324 540	339 380	663 920
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	284 800	295 700	580 500	317 600	328 000	645 600
	Medium	(1973)	285 300	296 200	581 500	319 100	329 500	648 600
	High	(1973)	285 700	296 600	582 300	320 300	330 700	651 000
	DOS	(1976)	294 230	306 450	600 680	332 350	346 070	678 420
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	289 550	298 060	587 610	318 750	327 150	645 900
	High	(1980)	289 570	298 120	587 690	318 780	327 200	645 980
65+ years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	15 980	20 810	36 790	19 350	25 860	45 210
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	19 300	21 500	40 800	23 200	27 200	50 400
	Medium	(1973)	19 300	21 500	40 800	23 200	27 200	50 400
	High	(1973)	19 300	21 500	40 800	23 200	27 200	50 400
	DOS	(1976)	14 680	19 500	34 180	17 360	24 890	42 250
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	19 110	23 250	42 360	23 100	29 050	52 150
	High	(1980)	19 130	23 270	42 400	23 100	29 080	52 180
TOTAL :	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	550 550	564 700	1 115 250	597 820	617 200	1 215 020
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	529 300	539 700	1 069 000	571 300	582 700	1 154 000
	Medium	(1973)	537 400	547 600	1 085 000	583 500	594 800	1 178 300
	High	(1973)	545 700	555 700	1 101 400	594 900	606 200	1 201 100
	DOS	(1976)	572 290	584 470	1 156 760	627 040	643 050	1 270 090
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	508 250	518 310	1 026 560	537 610	549 200	1 086 810
	High	(1980)	520 830	530 750	1 051 580	558 170	569 490	1 127 660

DOS: Department of Statistics.

TABLE 5.7
POPULATION PROJECTIONS ACCORDING TO AGE DISTRIBUTION : BLACKS

Black population	1970			1980		
	M	F	T	M	F	T
0-4 years: Census figures (1980)	1 194 121	1 209 065	2 403 186	1 672 293	1 651 251	3 323 544
Sadie (1973)	1 295 000	1 288 000	2 583 000	1 723 600	1 718 400	3 442 000
HSRC: Low (1973)	1 319 100	1 309 700	2 628 800	1 671 500	1 647 000	3 318 500
Medium (1973)	1 319 100	1 309 700	2 628 800	1 708 300	1 683 100	3 391 400
High (1973)	1 319 100	1 309 700	2 628 800	1 735 900	1 710 300	3 446 200
DOS (1976)	1 241 170	1 221 460	2 462 630	1 650 630	1 645 970	3 296 600
HSRC: Low (1980)	1 241 170	1 221 460	2 462 630	1 445 690	1 449 470	2 895 160
High (1980)	1 241 170	1 221 460	2 462 630	1 508 160	1 512 110	3 020 270
5-9 years: Census figures (1980)	1 120 657	1 123 959	2 244 616	1 457 861	1 451 226	2 909 087
Sadie (1973)	1 134 000	1 128 000	2 262 000	1 453 700	1 450 100	2 903 800
HSRC: Low (1973)	1 128 600	1 121 200	2 249 800	1 354 400	1 347 900	2 702 300
Medium (1973)	1 128 600	1 121 200	2 249 800	1 368 900	1 362 300	2 731 200
High (1973)	1 128 600	1 121 200	2 249 800	1 368 900	1 362 300	2 731 200
DOS (1976)	1 125 860	1 117 660	2 243 520	1 415 700	1 411 950	2 827 650
HSRC: Low (1980)	1 125 860	1 117 660	2 243 520	1 302 080	1 313 550	2 615 630
High (1980)	1 125 860	1 117 660	2 243 520	1 325 100	1 336 780	2 661 880
10-14 years: Census figures (1980)	994 797	1 005 556	2 000 353	1 254 242	1 254 199	2 508 441
Sadie (1973)	1 001 700	1 001 000	2 002 700	1 263 900	1 259 200	2 523 100
HSRC: Low (1973)	1 004 300	996 400	2 000 700	1 198 800	1 196 600	2 395 400
Medium (1973)	1 004 300	996 400	2 000 700	1 198 800	1 196 600	2 395 400
High (1973)	1 004 300	996 400	2 000 700	1 198 800	1 196 600	2 395 400
DOS (1976)	1 023 670	1 014 980	2 038 650	1 211 380	1 194 190	2 405 570
HSRC: Low (1980)	1 023 670	1 014 980	2 038 650	1 163 130	1 156 500	2 319 630
High (1980)	1 023 670	1 014 980	2 038 650	1 163 130	1 156 500	2 319 630
15-19 years: Census figures (1980)	739 563	809 404	1 548 967	1 114 341	1 112 336	2 226 677
Sadie (1973)	816 200	813 000	1 629 200	1 119 000	1 117 800	2 236 800
HSRC: Low (1973)	802 000	794 500	1 596 500	1 093 700	1 085 300	2 179 000
Medium (1973)	802 000	794 500	1 596 500	1 093 700	1 085 300	2 179 000
High (1973)	802 000	794 500	1 596 500	1 093 700	1 085 300	2 179 000
DOS (1976)	795 910	788 560	1 584 470	1 110 940	1 107 510	2 218 450
HSRC: Low (1980)	795 910	788 560	1 584 470	1 085 660	1 090 920	2 176 580
High (1980)	795 910	788 560	1 584 470	1 085 660	1 090 920	2 176 580

TABLE 5.7 (cont.)

Black population			1985			1990		
			M	F	T	M	F	T
0-4 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	2 014 100	2 008 400	4 022 500	2 317 000	2 312 000	4 629 000
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	1 871 700	1 852 500	3 724 200	2 068 100	2 045 300	4 113 400
	Medium	(1973)	1 924 900	1 905 100	3 830 000	2 153 900	2 130 000	4 283 900
	High	(1973)	1 978 000	1 957 800	3 935 800	2 215 000	2 190 500	4 405 500
	DOS	(1976)	1 858 870	1 853 500	3 712 370	2 054 680	2 048 830	4 103 510
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	1 541 140	1 544 010	3 085 150	1 600 340	1 602 220	3 202 560
	High	(1980)	1 648 690	1 651 760	3 300 450	1 755 650	1 757 710	3 513 360
5-9 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	1 698 700	1 693 700	3 392 400	1 989 500	1 983 300	3 972 800
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	1 562 600	1 548 000	3 110 600	1 558 200	1 750 000	3 308 200
	Medium	(1973)	1 597 000	1 582 000	3 179 000	1 808 200	1 799 700	3 607 900
	High	(1973)	1 622 700	1 607 500	3 230 200	1 858 100	1 849 500	3 707 600
	DOS	(1976)	1 626 860	1 622 270	3 249 130	1 836 190	1 830 330	3 666 520
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	1 396 070	1 407 520	2 803 590	1 497 450	1 508 620	3 006 070
	High	(1980)	1 456 390	1 468 350	2 924 740	1 601 960	1 603 910	3 202 870
10-14 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	1 446 600	1 444 900	2 891 500	1 691 300	1 688 200	3 379 500
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	1 335 700	1 329 000	2 664 700	1 542 400	1 528 000	3 070 400
	Medium	(1973)	1 350 000	1 343 300	2 693 300	1 576 300	1 561 600	3 137 900
	High	(1973)	1 350 000	1 343 300	2 693 300	1 601 800	1 586 800	3 188 600
	DOS	(1976)	1 408 760	1 406 860	2 815 620	1 619 700	1 617 080	3 236 780
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	1 283 150	1 300 990	2 584 140	1 378 470	1 395 910	2 774 380
	High	(1980)	1 305 840	1 324 000	2 629 840	1 438 040	1 456 230	2 894 270
15-19 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	1 255 700	1 254 100	2 509 800	1 438 100	1 439 500	2 877 600
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	1 181 300	1 178 900	2 360 200	1 317 300	1 310 900	2 628 200
	Medium	(1973)	1 181 300	1 178 900	2 360 200	1 331 300	1 324 900	2 656 200
	High	(1973)	1 181 300	1 178 900	2 360 200	1 331 300	1 324 900	2 656 200
	DOS	(1976)	1 203 510	1 189 290	2 392 800	1 400 450	1 401 660	2 802 110
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	1 145 290	1 144 590	2 289 880	1 265 830	1 289 340	2 555 170
	High	(1980)	1 145 290	1 144 590	2 289 880	1 288 210	1 312 130	2 600 340

TABLE 5.7 (cont.)

Black population		1995			2000		
		M	F	T	M	F	T
0-4 years:	Census figures (1980)						
	Sadie (1973)	2 599 000	2 591 000	5 190 000	2 915 000	2 908 000	5 823 000
	HSRC: Low (1973)	2 246 600	2 220 000	4 466 600	2 422 500	2 392 200	4 814 700
	Medium (1973)	2 392 400	2 364 000	4 756 400	2 633 500	2 600 600	5 234 100
	High (1973)	2 490 900	2 461 400	4 952 300	2 822 100	2 786 900	5 609 000
	DOS (1976)	2 276 270	2 269 890	4 546 160	2 515 220	2 508 000	5 023 220
	HSRC: Low (1980)	1 625 010	1 625 360	3 250 370	1 622 470	1 621 140	3 243 610
	High (1980)	1 834 240	1 834 640	3 668 880	1 899 090	1 897 530	3 796 620
5-9 years:	Census (1980)						
	Sadie (1973)	2 294 000	2 287 000	4 581 000	2 578 000	2 569 000	5 147 000
	HSRC: Low (1973)	1 952 100	1 941 900	3 894 000	2 130 500	2 117 500	4 248 000
	Medium (1973)	2 033 000	2 022 300	4 055 300	2 268 700	2 254 900	4 523 600
	High (1973)	2 090 700	2 079 800	4 170 500	2 362 100	2 347 800	4 709 900
	DOS (1976)	2 033 930	2 027 320	4 061 250	2 258 060	2 250 370	4 508 430
	HSRC: Low (1980)	1 563 520	1 573 730	3 137 250	1 592 930	1 602 790	3 195 720
	High (1980)	1 715 250	1 726 450	3 441 700	1 798 030	1 809 160	3 607 190
10-14 years:	Census figures (1980)						
	Sadie (1973)	1 982 000	1 977 900	3 959 900	2 286 000	2 282 000	4 568 000
	HSRC: Low (1973)	1 737 100	1 729 400	3 466 500	1 930 300	1 921 000	3 851 300
	Medium (1973)	1 786 400	1 778 500	3 564 900	2 010 300	2 000 600	4 010 900
	High (1973)	1 835 800	1 827 600	3 663 400	2 067 400	2 057 400	4 124 800
	DOS (1976)	1 829 210	1 825 390	3 654 600	2 027 420	2 022 660	4 050 080
	HSRC: Low (1980)	1 481 350	1 498 080	2 979 430	1 549 480	1 564 650	3 114 130
	High (1980)	1 584 730	1 602 630	3 187 360	1 699 850	1 716 490	3 416 340
15-19 years:	Census figures (1980)						
	Sadie (1973)	1 682 000	1 682 800	3 364 800	1 972 400	1 972 400	3 944 800
	HSRC: Low (1973)	1 522 500	1 508 800	3 031 300	1 716 000	1 709 500	3 425 500
	Medium (1973)	1 555 900	1 542 000	3 097 900	1 764 800	1 758 000	3 522 800
	High (1973)	1 581 000	1 566 900	3 147 900	1 813 500	1 806 600	3 620 100
	DOS (1976)	1 610 950	1 611 900	3 222 850	1 820 430	1 820 270	3 640 700
	HSRC: Low (1980)	1 362 330	1 385 200	2 747 530	1 466 550	1 488 460	2 955 010
	High (1980)	1 421 200	1 445 260	2 866 260	1 568 900	1 592 340	3 161 240

TABLE 5.7 (cont.)

Black population		1970			1980		
		M	F	T	M	F	T
0-19 years:	Census figures (1980)	4 049 138	4 147 984	8 197 122	5 498 737	5 469 012	10 967 749
	Sadie (1973)	4 246 900	4 230 000	8 476 900	5 560 200	5 545 500	11 105 700
	HSRC: Low (1973)	4 254 000	4 221 800	8 475 800	5 318 400	5 276 800	10 595 200
	Medium (1973)	4 254 000	4 221 800	8 475 800	5 369 700	5 327 300	10 697 000
	High (1973)	4 254 000	4 221 800	8 475 800	5 397 300	5 354 500	10 751 800
	DOS (1976)	4 186 610	4 142 660	8 329 270	5 388 650	5 359 620	10 748 270
	HSRC: Low (1980)	4 186 610	4 142 660	8 329 270	4 996 560	5 010 440	10 007 000
	High (1980)	4 186 610	4 142 660	8 329 270	5 082 050	5 096 310	10 178 360
20-64 years:	Census figures(1980)	2 807 730	3 284 146	6 091 876	4 616 810	4 597 417	9 214 227
	Sadie (1973)	3 184 500	3 272 000	6 456 500	4 343 700	4 556 200	8 899 900
	HSRC: Low (1973)	3 255 500	3 289 500	6 545 000	4 391 400	4 431 100	8 822 500
	Medium (1973)	3 255 500	3 289 500	6 545 000	4 391 500	4 431 100	8 822 600
	High (1973)	3 255 500	3 289 500	6 545 000	4 391 500	4 431 100	8 822 600
	DOS (1976)	3 257 720	3 282 480	6 540 200	4 413 530	4 565 910	8 979 440
	HSRC: Low (1980)	3 257 720	3 282 480	6 540 200	4 362 890	4 499 330	8 862 220
	High (1980)	3 257 720	3 282 480	6 540 200	4 362 890	4 499 330	8 862 220
65+ years:	Census figures (1980)	225 974	308 960	534 934	294 172	410 122	704 294
	Sadie (1973)	228 700	306 000	534 700	259 000	374 100	633 100
	HSRC: Low (1973)	238 600	305 500	544 100	251 500	310 300	561 800
	Medium (1973)	238 600	305 500	544 100	251 500	310 300	561 800
	High (1973)	238 600	305 500	544 100	251 500	310 300	561 800
	DOS (1976)	247 730	310 680	558 410	267 040	370 000	637 040
	HSRC: Low (1980)	247 730	310 680	558 410	259 400	343 010	602 410
	High (1980)	247 730	310 680	558 410	259 400	343 010	602 410
TOTAL:	Census figures (1980)	7 082 842	7 741 090	14 823 932	10 409 719	10 476 551	20 886 270
	Sadie (1973)	7 660 100	7 808 000	15 468 100	10 162 900	10 475 800	20 638 700
	HSRC: Low (1973)	7 748 100	7 816 800	15 564 900	9 961 300	10 018 200	19 979 500
	Medium (1973)	7 748 100	7 816 800	15 564 900	10 012 700	10 068 700	20 081 400
	High (1973)	7 748 100	7 816 800	15 564 900	10 040 300	10 095 900	20 136 200
	DOS (1976)	7 692 060	7 735 820	15 427 880	10 069 220	10 295 530	20 364 750
	HSRC: Low (1980)	7 692 060	7 735 820	15 427 880	9 618 850	9 852 780	19 471 630
	High (1980)	7 692 060	7 735 820	15 427 880	9 704 340	9 938 650	19 642 990

Sources: . The same as for Table 5.4.
. BENSO (1982).

TABLE 5.7 (cont.)

Black population			1985			1990		
			M	F	T	M	F	T
0-19 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	6 415 100	6 401 100	12 816 200	7 435 900	7 423 000	14 858 900
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	5 951 300	5 908 400	11 859 700	6 486 000	6 634 200	13 120 200
	Medium	(1973)	6 053 200	6 009 300	12 062 500	6 869 700	6 816 200	13 685 900
	High	(1973)	6 132 000	6 087 500	12 219 500	7 006 200	6 951 700	13 957 900
	DOS	(1976)	6 098 000	6 071 920	12 169 920	6 911 020	6 897 900	13 808 920
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	5 365 650	5 397 110	10 762 760	5 742 090	5 796 090	11 538 180
	High	(1980)	5 556 210	5 588 700	11 144 910	6 083 860	6 139 980	12 223 840
20-64 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	5 088 800	5 362 200	10 451 000	5 921 800	6 260 800	12 182 600
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	5 089 700	5 134 300	10 224 000	5 824 300	5 881 400	11 705 700
	Medium	(1973)	5 089 700	5 134 300	10 224 000	5 824 300	5 881 400	11 705 700
	High	(1973)	5 089 700	5 134 300	10 224 000	5 824 300	5 881 400	11 705 700
	DOS	(1976)	5 140 730	5 358 360	10 499 090	5 916 330	6 188 570	12 104 900
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	5 049 430	5 244 410	10 293 840	5 758 040	5 998 670	11 756 710
	High	(1980)	5 049 430	4 244 410	10 293 840	5 758 040	5 998 670	11 756 710
65+ years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	291 300	430 700	722 000	343 400	507 600	851 000
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	288 900	354 700	643 600	339 800	415 800	755 600
	Medium	(1973)	288 900	354 700	643 600	339 800	415 800	755 600
	High	(1973)	288 900	354 700	643 600	339 800	415 800	755 600
	DOS	(1976)	301 040	429 100	730 140	352 290	510 250	862 540
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	293 650	393 620	687 270	345 730	466 430	812 160
	High	(1980)	293 650	393 620	687 270	345 730	466 430	812 160
TOTAL:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	11 795 200	12 194 000	23 989 200	13 701 100	14 191 400	27 892 500
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	11 329 900	11 397 400	22 727 300	12 650 100	12 931 400	25 581 500
	Medium	(1973)	11 431 800	11 498 300	22 930 100	13 033 800	13 113 400	26 147 200
	High	(1973)	11 510 600	11 576 500	23 087 100	13 170 300	13 248 900	26 419 200
	DOS	(1976)	11 539 770	11 859 380	23 399 150	13 179 640	13 596 720	26 776 360
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	10 708 730	11 035 140	21 743 870	11 845 860	12 261 190	24 107 050
	High	(1980)	10 899 290	11 226 730	22 126 020	12 187 630	12 605 080	24 792 710

NOTE: Foreign Blacks excluded.
Blacks from self-governing and independent states included.

TABLE 5.7 (cont.)

Black population			1995			2000		
			M	F	T	M	F	T
0-19 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	8 557 000	8 538 700	17 095 700	9 751 400	9 731 400	19 482 800
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	7 458 300	7 400 100	14 858 400	8 199 300	8 140 200	16 339 500
	Medium	(1973)	7 767 700	7 706 800	15 474 500	8 677 300	8 614 100	17 291 400
	High	(1973)	7 998 400	7 935 700	15 934 100	9 065 100	8 998 700	18 064 800
	DOS	(1976)	7 750 360	7 734 500	15 484 860	9 510 360	9 487 560	18 997 920
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	6 032 210	6 082 370	12 114 580	6 231 430	6 277 040	12 508 470
	High	(1980)	6 555 420	6 608 780	13 164 200	6 965 870	7 015 520	13 981 390
20-64 years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	6 889 300	7 292 200	14 182 000	8 057 800	8 514 600	16 572 400
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	6 638 500	6 707 700	13 346 200	7 597 400	7 674 200	15 271 600
	Medium	(1973)	6 652 300	6 721 500	13 373 800	7 643 800	7 720 300	15 364 100
	High	(1973)	6 652 300	6 721 500	13 373 800	7 668 400	7 744 800	15 413 200
	DOS	(1976)	6 850 000	7 184 250	14 034 250	9 175 200	9 634 180	18 809 380
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	6 548 130	6 850 850	13 398 980	7 393 100	7 748 580	15 141 680
	High	(1980)	6 570 130	6 873 500	13 443 630	7 472 700	7 830 180	15 302 880
65+ years:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	416 100	610 600	1 026 700	501 700	736 300	1 238 000
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	403 000	491 600	894 600	474 500	577 300	1 051 800
	Medium	(1973)	403 000	491 600	894 600	474 500	577 300	1 051 800
	High	(1973)	403 000	491 600	894 600	474 500	577 300	1 051 800
	DOS	(1976)	421 010	612 790	1 033 800	609 310	877 450	1 486 760
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	411 930	557 130	969 060	491 870	664 450	1 156 320
	High	(1980)	411 930	557 130	969 060	491 870	664 450	1 156 320
TOTAL:	Census figures	(1980)						
	Sadie	(1973)	15 862 400	16 442 000	32 304 400	18 310 900	18 982 300	37 293 200
	HSRC: Low	(1973)	14 499 800	14 599 400	29 099 200	16 271 200	16 391 700	32 662 900
	Medium	(1973)	14 823 000	14 919 900	29 742 900	16 795 600	16 911 700	33 707 300
	High	(1973)	15 053 700	15 148 800	30 202 500	17 208 000	17 320 800	34 528 800
	DOS	(1976)	15 021 370	15 531 540	30 552 910	19 294 870	19 999 190	39 294 060
	HSRC: Low	(1980)	12 992 270	13 490 350	26 482 620	14 116 400	14 690 070	28 806 470
	High	(1980)	13 537 480	14 039 410	27 576 890	14 930 440	15 510 150	30 440 590

DOS: Department of Statistics.

TABLE 5.8

CONVERSION OF POPULATION PROJECTIONS FOR 1980 ACCORDING TO AGE INTERVALS BASED ON THE 1980 POPULATION CENSUS FIGURES: WHITES, COLOUREDS, ASIANS AND BLACKS

A. WHITE POPULATION

Sex	Age interval	1980 Census	Projections made by						
			Sadie (1973)	HSRC (1973)			DOS (1976)	HSRC (1981)	
				Low	Medium	High		Low	High
Male	0- 4 yrs	100	135	123	125	128	127	99	99
	5- 9 yrs	100	112	107	108	108	107	101	101
	10-14 yrs	100	105	101	101	101	103	100	100
	15-19 yrs	100	101	100	100	100	101	99	99
	0-19 yrs	100	113	107	108	109	109	100	100
	20-64 yrs	100	101	97	97	97	103	99	99
	65+ yrs	100	95	93	93	93	104	102	102
Female	0- 4 yrs	100	134	124	127	130	127	99	99
	5- 9 yrs	100	112	109	109	110	108	101	101
	10-14 yrs	100	103	99	99	99	102	99	99
	15-19 yrs	100	101	100	100	100	101	99	99
	0-19 yrs	100	112	108	109	109	109	100	100
	20-64 yrs	100	102	99	99	99	102	99	99
	65+ yrs	100	100	95	95	95	99	96	96
TOTAL	0- 4 yrs	100	135	124	126	129	127	99	99
	5- 9 yrs	100	112	108	108	109	108	101	101
	10-14 yrs	100	104	100	100	100	102	100	100
	15-19 yrs	100	101	100	100	100	101	99	99
	0-19 yrs	100	113	108	108	109	109	100	100
	20-64 yrs	100	101	98	98	98	102	99	99
	65+ yrs	100	98	94	94	94	101	99	99
Number within limits 98-102			8 38 %	8 38 %	8 38 %	8 38 %	9 43 %	20 95 %	20 95 %

Source: Table 5.4.

TABLE 5.8 (cont.)

B. COLOURED POPULATION

Sex	Age interval	1980 Census	Projections made by						
			Sadie (1973)	HSRC (1973)			DOS (1976)	HSRC (1981)	
				Low	Medium	High		Low	High
Male	0- 4 yrs	100	143	132	134	136	130	98	98
	5- 9 yrs	100	117	103	104	104	103	91	91
	10-14 yrs	100	102	90	90	90	97	95	95
	15-19 yrs	100	100	99	99	90	100	98	98
	0-19 yrs	100	115	106	106	107	107	96	96
	20-64 yrs	100	100	97	97	97	101	99	99
	65+ yrs	100	91	86	86	86	99	93	93
Female	0- 4 yrs	100	142	131	133	135	129	98	97
	5- 9 yrs	100	118	93	94	94	105	92	92
	10-14 yrs	100	104	92	92	92	99	96	96
	15-19 yrs	100	100	100	100	100	101	99	99
	0-19 yrs	100	116	104	105	105	108	96	96
	20-64 yrs	100	100	99	99	99	100	99	99
	65+ yrs	100	96	86	86	86	94	89	89
TOTAL	0- 4 yrs	100	142	132	133	135	129	98	98
	5- 9 yrs	100	118	98	99	99	104	92	92
	10-14 yrs	100	103	91	91	91	98	96	96
	15-19 yrs	100	100	100	100	100	100	99	99
	0-19 yrs	100	116	105	106	106	108	96	96
	20-64 yrs	100	100	98	98	98	101	99	99
	65+ yrs	100	94	86	86	86	96	90	91
Number within limits		98-102	7 33 %	6 29 %	6 29 %	5 24 %	9 43 %	9 43 %	8 38 %

Source: Table 5.5.

TABLE 5.8 (cont.)

C. ASIAN POPULATION

Sex	Age interval	1980 Census	Projections made by						
			Sadie (1973)	HSRC (1973)			DOS (1976)	HSRC (1981)	
				Low	Medium	High		Low	High
Male	0- 4 yrs	100	108	107	109	111	116	100	100
	5- 9 yrs	100	91	91	92	93	95	100	100
	10-14 yrs	100	100	97	97	97	100	99	99
	15-19 yrs	100	100	99	99	99	101	99	99
	0-19 yrs	100	100	99	99	100	103	100	100
	20-64 yrs	100	102	97	97	97	99	98	98
	65+ yrs	100	99	97	97	97	93	106	106
Female	0- 4 yrs	100	109	107	109	110	116	100	100
	5- 9 yrs	100	91	91	92	92	95	100	100
	10-14 yrs	100	96	97	97	97	97	97	97
	15-19 yrs	100	99	99	99	99	101	100	100
	0-19 yrs	100	99	98	99	100	102	99	99
	20-64 yrs	100	101	98	98	98	100	99	99
	65+ yrs	100	98	91	91	91	88	101	101
TOTAL	0- 4 yrs	100	108	107	109	111	116	100	100
	5- 9 yrs	100	91	91	92	93	95	100	100
	10-14 yrs	100	98	97	97	97	98	98	98
	15-19 yrs	100	100	99	99	99	101	99	99
	0-19 yrs	100	99	98	99	100	103	99	99
	20-64 yrs	100	102	97	97	97	100	98	98
	65+ yrs	100	98	94	94	94	90	103	103
Number within limits 98-102			14 67 %	7 33 %	7 33 %	7 33 %	9 43 %	18 86 %	18 86 %

Source: Table 5.6.

TABLE 5.8 (cont.)

D. BLACK POPULATION

Sex	Age interval	1980 Census	Projections made by						
			Sadie (1973)	HSRC (1973)			DOS (1976)	HSRC (1981)	
				Low	Medium	High		Low	High
Male	0- 4 yrs	100	103	100	102	104	99	86	90
	5- 9 yrs	100	100	93	94	94	97	89	91
	10-14 yrs	100	101	96	96	96	97	93	93
	15-19 yrs	100	100	98	98	98	100	97	97
	0-19 yrs	100	101	97	98	98	98	91	92
	20-64 yrs	100	94	95	95	95	96	95	95
	65+ yrs	100	88	85	85	85	91	88	88
Female	0- 4 yrs	100	104	100	102	104	100	88	92
	5- 9 yrs	100	100	93	94	94	97	91	92
	10-14 yrs	100	100	95	95	95	95	92	92
	15-19 yrs	100	100	98	98	98	100	98	98
	0-19 yrs	100	101	96	97	98	98	92	92
	20-64 yrs	100	99	96	96	96	99	98	98
	65+ yrs	100	91	76	76	76	90	84	84
TOTAL	0- 4 yrs	100	104	100	102	104	99	87	91
	5- 9 yrs	100	100	93	94	94	97	90	92
	10-14 yrs	100	101	95	95	95	96	92	92
	15-19 yrs	100	100	98	98	98	100	98	98
	0-19 yrs	100	101	97	98	98	98	91	93
	20-64 yrs	100	97	96	96	96	97	96	96
	65+ yrs	100	90	80	80	80	90	86	86
Number within limits		98-102	13 62 %	6 29 %	8 38 %	6 29 %	10 48 %	3 14 %	3 14 %
TOTAL for 4 population groups			42 50 %	27 32 %	29 35 %	26 31 %	37 44 %	50 60 %	49 58 %

Source: Table 5.7.

DOS: Department of Statistics.

TABLE 5.9

ANALYSIS AND COMPARISON OF RESPECTIVE PROJECTIONS REGARDING TOO HIGH OR TOO LOW WITH RESPECT TO 1980 CENSUS FIGURES TAKEN AS 100

	Sadie (1973)	HSRC (1973)			Department of Statistics (1976)	HSRC (1980)	
		Low	Medium	High		Low	High
Whites							
Below 100	2 10 %	7 33 %	7 33 %	7 33 %	1 5 %	12 57 %	12 57 %
100	1 5 %	4 19 %	4 19 %	4 19 %	0 0 %	5 24 %	5 24 %
Over 100	18 85 %	10 48 %	10 48 %	10 48 %	20 95 %	4 19 %	4 19 %
Coloureds							
Below 100	3 14 %	12 57 %	12 57 %	12 57 %	6 29 %	21 100 %	21 100 %
100	6 29 %	2 10 %	2 10 %	2 10 %	3 14 %	0 0 %	0 0 %
Over 100	12 57 %	7 33 %	7 33 %	7 33 %	12 57 %	0 0 %	0 0 %
Asians							
Below 100	11 52 %	18 86 %	18 86 %	15 72 %	9 43 %	10 48 %	10 48 %
100	4 19 %	0 0 %	0 0 %	3 14 %	3 14 %	8 38 %	8 38 %
Over 100	6 29 %	3 14 %	3 14 %	3 14 %	9 43 %	3 14 %	3 14 %
Blacks							
Below 100	6 29 %	18 86 %	18 86 %	18 86 %	17 81 %	21 100 %	21 100 %
100	7 33 %	3 14 %	0 0 %	0 0 %	4 19 %	0 0 %	0 0 %
Over 100	8 38 %	0 0 %	3 14 %	3 14 %	0 0 %	0 0 %	0 0 %
Total population							
Below 100	22 26 %	55 65 %	55 66 %	52 62 %	33 39 %	64 76 %	64 76 %
100	18 22 %	9 11 %	6 7 %	9 11 %	10 12 %	13 16 %	13 16 %
Over 100	44 52 %	20 24 %	23 27 %	23 27 %	41 49 %	7 8 %	7 8 %

TABLE 5.9 (cont.)

	Sadie (1973)	HSRC (1973)			Department of Statistics (1976)	HSRC (1980)	
		Low	Medium	High		Low	High
Within limits 98-102							
Whites	8	8	8	8	9	20	20
	38 %	38 %	38 %	38 %	43 %	95 %	95 %
Coloureds	7	6	6	5	9	9	8
	33 %	29 %	29 %	24 %	43 %	43 %	38 %
Asians	14	7	7	7	9	18	18
	67 %	33 %	33 %	33 %	43 %	86 %	86 %
Blacks	13	6	8	6	10	3	3
	62 %	29 %	38 %	29 %	48 %	14 %	14 %
Total population	42	27	29	26	37	50	49
	50 %	32 %	35 %	31 %	44 %	60 %	58 %

Source: Table 5.8.

Comment on Tables 5.8 and 5.9:

As far as Sadie's projections are concerned, it appears that those in respect of the Whites were within the stipulated limits 38 % and those for the Coloureds 33 % of the time. Those for Blacks were within the limits 62 % and those for Asians (the most successful) 67 % of the time. For Whites, Coloureds and Asians Sadie's projection figures were generally too high and for Asians they were too low. The biggest deviations in Sadie's projection occurred in respect of the age group interval 0-4 years.

All three the HSRC's projections in 1973 (low, medium and high) deviate considerably from the limit of 98 to 102. All three are generally too high for Whites and too low for Coloureds, Asians and Blacks. The biggest deviations are found in respect of the age group interval 0-4 years, which is too high (particularly for Whites and Coloureds) and in respect of the age group interval 65 years and older, where the projections are too low.

The Department of Statistics' projections were within the limits of 98 to 102 in between 43 % and 48 % of the cases. The projection figures for Whites and Coloureds were generally too high and those for Blacks too low. Just as in the case of Sadie's and the HSRC's projections, the biggest deviations here were in respect of the interval 0-4 years (too high) and that for 65+ years (too low).

Both the projections made by the HSRC in 1980 were reasonably successful in respect of Whites and Asians, but deviated with regard to Coloureds and Blacks. The figures obtained in these two projections for all four population groups were generally somewhat low, whereas the figures for the age groups of the White population were very close to those of the 1980 census. In the case of the Coloureds the figures for the age groups 5-9, 10-14, 0-19 and 65+ years were too low. The figures for the various age groups in the Asian population were all quite close to the 1980 census figures. The figures for the group 65+ years of the Black population were far too low, while those for the age groups 0-4, 5-9, 10-14, 0-19 and 20-64 years were merely too low.

In 1973 the HSRC made three projections (low, medium and high) and in 1980 two (low and high). According to Tables 5.8 and 5.9 the reductions of the three projections in 1973 differ little or not at all from one another, and the same applies to the two for 1980.

The information in Tables 5.8 and 5.9 reveal that the two most important factors that are responsible for most of the deviations in the projections concerned are:

firstly, the number of births in the age group 0-4 years, and secondly, the number of deaths, mainly in the 65+ year groups, but also in the 0-4 year-old group.

The effect of the above factors on population figures is difficult to predict and calculate, as there are so many variables that can also affect them.

CHAPTER 6

SUMMARY OF FINDINGS

The figures used in the composition and geographic distribution of the total population of Southern Africa were obtained mainly from periodical censuses and midyear estimates conducted by the Central Statistical Services (formerly the Department of Statistics and prior to that, the Bureau for Statistics), as well as from other available sources. Because each of the TBVC countries gained independence (Transkei in 1976, Bophuthatswana in 1977, Venda in 1979 and Ciskei in 1981), the Central Statistical Services discontinued the inclusion of the population statistics of Blacks in the republics concerned in their official publications. This naturally resulted in a substantial difference in the information regarding Blacks between the results of the 1980 census and that of previous censuses, and the two sets of data are therefore not comparable any longer. To draw a meaningful comparison between the population censuses of the different years it was decided to take into account not only the official figures of the Central Statistical Services, but also the information relating to the independent states concerned. In order to make provision for this adjustment, the term Southern Africa is always used to indicate that the information on the independent states is included with that on the Republic of South Africa.

The mean annual percentage increases of the four population groups of Southern Africa over the period 1904 to 1980 were 4,03 % for

Whites, 6,44 % for Coloureds, 7,52 % for Asians and 6,56 % for Blacks. Compared with the other three population groups, the percentage increase for Whites was the lowest.

The percentage compositions for 1904 and 1980 are listed below in terms of the four population groups of Southern Africa:

Population group	1904	1980
Whites	21,59 %	15,72 %
Coloureds	8,60 %	9,08 %
Asians	2,36 %	2,85 %
Blacks	67,45 %	72,35 %

This means that the White population figure decreased by almost 6 %, the figure for Coloureds and Asians showed a slight increase of approximately 0,5 % each, and that for Blacks increased by almost 5 %.

The Southern African population consists of at least 12 different minority groups. When a comparison is drawn between the composition of the total population according to ethnic groups for 1970 and 1980, the following is apparent:

Regarding the total population, decreases occurred in the percentages represented by Whites, Coloureds, Asians and Xhosas; there was a very slight decrease in the percentage of the total population represented by Vendas, and an increase in the percentages represented by the other Black ethnic groups (Zulus, Northern Sothos, Tswanas, Southern Sothos, Shangaans/Tsongas, Swazis, Ndebeles and "other Blacks").

The latest available population statistics point to a major geographic shift taking place in respect of the distribution of the different population groups in Southern Africa. According to the gains and losses in the shifts of the total population up to 1980, the population is gradually moving in a northern and northeastern direction, owing to factors such as land consolidation, resettlement, economic development, urbanization and the depopulation of the countryside. This has a definite effect on all the population groups, since specific regions experience abnormally high population increases and others suffer huge population losses. Such moves particularly concern the provision of infrastructures, sufficient and suitable housing, adequate educational facilities and other essential services in certain areas. Full details concerning the central government's proposed regional development of the country's eight regions, which include all the provinces, the self-governing national states and the independent states, are given in Chapter 2.

The statistical information obtained from the 1960, 1970 and 1980 population censuses and concerning the age distribution of population growth and natural growth for the different population groups is contained in Chapter 3 and reveals that,

- compared with the other three population groups, Whites on average constitute the "oldest" population group;
- in 1960 Asians on average constituted the "youngest" population group, while the figures for 1970 and 1980 indicated that, compared with the Coloured population, Asians are growing "older" at a relatively faster rate;
- according to the 1970 and 1980 figures the Coloured population also seems to be growing relatively "older", and
- in 1980 the percentage that the younger age groups in the Black population constituted of the total Black population unmistakably pointed towards their rapidly becoming the youngest of the four population groups of Southern Africa.

Population projections prepared by the HSRC, Professor Sadie and the Central Statistical Services for 1980 are reflected in Chapter 5 and are (in table form) compared with the latest available population census figures for 1980 (released by the Central Statistical Services in 1982). These comparisons are used to determine the deviations that occurred between the estimated projections and the actual censuses. The earlier projections for 1980 that were made with regard to each of the groups (Whites, Coloureds, Asians, Blacks, as well as the total population), are either too high or too low; in some cases the differences even seem to be considerable.

The following reasons can be offered for these deviations:

- After 1970 there was a marked decrease in the fertility of all four population groups.
- During the period 1970 to 1980 the natural growth rate of the White, Coloured and Asian populations declined by respectively 42 %, 15 % and 30 %.
- Regarding the birthrates per 1 000 of the White, Coloured and Asian populations, the percentage decreases are respectively 29 %, 23 % and 27 % for the period 1970 to 1980.
- No official data in respect of fertility rates and birthrates for Blacks are available (only constant estimates are supplied).
- Regarding the percentage representation of the various numbers of children under the age of one within the total population, decreases occurred in respect of the White, Coloured and Asian populations, while an increase occurred in respect of the Black population during the period 1960 to 1980.

Attempts were made at providing the possible reasons for the decline in the White, Coloured and Asian birthrates, as well as for the decrease in the numbers of children under the age of one in each of the four population groups. Predicting and calculating the effect that such factors may have on population figures are extremely difficult since so many other variables are also involved.

LIST OF SOURCES

1. BASSON, J.D. *'n Ontleding van die onderwysfinansies in die Republiek van Suid-Afrika.* Pretoria : Raad vir Geesteswetenskaplike Navorsing, 1972.

2. BOPHUTHATSWANA (Republic). Department of Education. *Annual report 1983.* Mafikeng : Department of Education, 1984.

3. BOPHUTHASTWANA (Republic). Department of Education. *Annual report 1982.* Mafikeng : Department of Education, 1983.

4. BOPHUTHATSWANA (Republic). Department of Education. *Annual report 1981.* Mafikeng : Department of Education, 1982.

5. BOPHUTHATSWANA (Republic). Department of Education. *Annual report 1980.* Mafikeng : Department of Education, 1981.

6. BOPHUTHATSWANA (Republic). Department of Education. *Report for the period 1 January 1979 to 31 December 1979.* Mafikeng : Department of Education, 1980.

7. BOPHUTHATSWANA (Republic). Department of Education. *Report for the period 1 January 1978 to 31 December 1978.* Montshiwa : Department of Education, 1979.

8. BUREAU FOR ECONOMIC RESEARCH: CO-OPERATION AND DEVELOPMENT (BENSO). Statistical survey of Black development. Part I : RSA/Self-governing national states 1982. Pretoria, 1983.

9. BUREAU FOR ECONOMIC RESEARCH: CO-OPERATION AND DEVELOPMENT (BENSO). Statistical survey of Black development. Part II : Independent states (TBVC countries) 1982. Pretoria, 1983.

10. BUREAU FOR ECONOMIC RESEARCH: CO-OPERATION AND DEVELOPMENT (BENSO). Statistical survey of Black development. Part I : RSA/ Self-governing national states 1981. Pretoria, 1982.

11. BUREAU FOR ECONOMIC RESEARCH: CO-OPERATION AND DEVELOPMENT (BENSO). Statistical survey of Black development. Part II : Independent states (TBVC countries) 1981. Pretoria, 1982.

12. BUREAU FOR ECONOMIC RESEARCH: CO-OPERATION AND DEVELOPMENT (BENSO). Statistical survey of Black development 1980. Pretoria, 1981.

13. BUREAU FOR ECONOMIC RESEARCH: CO-OPERATION AND DEVELOPMENT (BENSO). Statistical survey of Black development 1979. Pretoria, 1980.

14. BUREAU FOR ECONOMIC RESEARCH: CO-OPERATION AND DEVELOPMENT (BENSO). Statistical survey of Black development 1978. Pretoria, 1979.

15. BURO VIR EKONOMIESE NAVORSING INSAKE BANTOE-ONTWIKKELING (BENBO). *Swart ontwikkeling in Suid-Afrika : Die ekonomiese ontwikkeling van die Swart volke in die tuislande van die Republiek van Suid-Afrika 1976.* Johannesburg : Perskor, 1976.

16. BUTLER, J., ROTBERG, R.I., ADAMS, J. *The Black homelands of South Africa. The political and economic development of Bophuthatswana and KwaZulu.* California : University of California Press, 1977.

17. CHESSWAS, J.D. *Methodologies of educational planning. Text and tables.* Paris : UNESCO/IIEP, 1968.

18. CISKEI (Republic). Department of Education. *Annual report 1983.* Zwelitsha : Department of Education, 1984.

19. CISKEI (Republic). Department of Education. *Annual report 1982.* Zwelitsha : Department of Education, 1983.

20. COHN, E. *The economics of education.* Lexington : Lexington Books, 1972.

21. COOMBS, P.H., HALLAK, J. *Managing educational costs.* New York : Oxford University Press, 1972.

22. COUNCIL FOR SCIENTIFIC AND INDUSTRIAL RESEARCH. National Building Research Institute. *The current and projected need for school*

facilities and cost implications. Work document for the Building Services Committee, HSRC Investigation into Education. Pretoria : HSRC, 1981.

23. COUNCIL FOR SCIENTIFIC AND INDUSTRIAL RESEARCH. National Building Research Institute. *The number, quality, geographic spread and utilisation of existing schools.* Work document for the Building Services Committee, HSRC Investigation into Education. Pretoria : HSRC, 1980.

24. D'ARCY, MACMANUS & MASIUS. *2001 Multi-Ethnic Marketing - A preview to the future.* Johannesburg, 1983.

25. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING. *Annual return of schools on the first Tuesday of March 1983.* Department of Education and Training. Departments of Education - national states. 00/ET 20. Tables 10 and 11. Pretoria : Department of Education and Training, 1983.

26. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION AND TRAINING. Black education : not just a new name: says Mr G.J. Rousseau, Secretary for Education and Training. Pretoria : Department of Education and Training, 1980.

27. DIRECTOR-GENERAL: EDUCATION AND TRAINING. Departmental Circular no. 7 of 1982 (file no. 19/1/1/2, 1982-07-07): *Subsidizing of*

farm school buildings. Pretoria : Department of Education and Training, 1982.

28. DIREKTEUR-GENERAAL : ONDERWYS EN OPLEIDING. Korrespondensie insake RGN-ondersoek na die Onderwys : knelpunte in Swart onderwys (lêer 25/1/11, 1980-09-10). Pretoria : Departement van Onderwys en opleiding, 1980.

29. DROST, A.W. *Aspects of classroom practice in Physical Science.* Report 0-111. Pretoria : HSRC, 1982.

30. EDDING, F. *International developments of educational expenditure 1950-1965.* Paris : Unesco, 1970.

31. EDDING, F. *Methods of analysing educational outlay.* Paris : Unesco, 1966.

32. ETHEREDGE, D.A. The financing of education in South Africa. *The Transvaal Educational News.* Volume 80 (3), March 1982 : 7-9.

33. FEITE. *Ekonomiese soeklig.* Ekonomiese afdeling. Volkskas Bpk. Pretoria, Maart 1983.

34. GROBBELAAR, J.R. *Swart onderwys 1980-2000.* Universiteit van Stellenbosch : Eenheid vir toekomsnavorsing, Buro vir Ekonomiese Ondersoek. Stellenbosch, April 1981.

35. HALLAK, J. The analysis of educational costs and expenditure. Paris : Unesco/IIEP, 1969.

36. HARBISON, F.H. Human resources as the wealth of nations. London : Oxford University Press, 1973.

37. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. HSRC Investigation into Education. Draft educational principles for the RSA. Pretoria, 17 November 1980.

38. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. Report of the Main Committee of the HSRC Investigation into Education 1. Provision of education in the RSA 1981. Pretoria, July 1981.

39. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. HSRC Investigation into Education. Report of the Work Committee : Education principles and policy 2. Principles for the provision of education in the RSA 1981. Pretoria, July 1981.

40. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. HSRC Investigation into Education. Report of the Work Committee 3. Education management 1981. Pretoria, July 1981.

41. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. HSRC Investigation into Education. Report of the Work Committee 4. Education financing 1981. Pretoria, July 1981.

42. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. HSRC Investigation into Education. Report of the Work Committee 5. *Education system planning* 1981. Pretoria, July 1981.

43. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. HSRC Investigation into Education. Report of the Work Committee 6. *Curriculum development* 1981. Pretoria, July 1981.

44. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. HSRC Investigation into Education. Report of the Work Committee 7. *Guidance* 1981. Pretoria, July 1981.

45. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. HSRC Investigation into Education. Report of the Work Committee 8. *Education for children with special educational needs* 1981. Pretoria, July 1981.

46. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. HSRC Investigation into Education. Report of the Work Committee 9. *Building services* 1981. Pretoria, July 1981.

47. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. HSRC Investigation into Education. Report of the Work Committee 10. *Health, medical and paramedical services* 1981. Pretoria, July 1981.

48. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. HSRC Investigation into Education. Report of the Work Committee 11. *Demography, education and manpower* 1981. Pretoria, July 1981.

49. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. HSRC Investigation into Education. Report of the Work Committee 12. *Teaching of the natural sciences and Mathematics* 1981. Pretoria, July 1981.

50. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. HSRC Investigation into Education. Report of the Work Committee 12T. *Technical and vocational education* 1981. Pretoria, July 1981.

51. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. HSRC Investigation into Education. Report of the Work Committee 13. *Recruitment and training of teachers* 1981. Pretoria, July 1981.

52. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. HSRC Investigation into Education. Report of the Work Committee 14. *Innovational strategies in education* 1981. Pretoria, July 1981.

53. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. HSRC Investigation into Education. Report of the Work Committee 15. *Programme for equal quality in education* 1981. Pretoria, July 1981.

54. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. HSRC Investigation into Education. Report of the Work Committee 16. *Legal matters* 1981. Pretoria, July 1981.

55. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. HSRC Investigation into Education. Report of the Work Committee 17. Educational technology 1981. Pretoria, July 1981.

56. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. HSRC Investigation into Education. Report of the Work Committee 18. Languages and language instruction 1981. Pretoria, July 1981.

57. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. HSRC Investigation into Education. Report of the Work Committee. Teaching of the natural sciences, Mathematics and technical subjects : technical and vocational education. Pretoria, 1981.

58. HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL. Newsletter Number 140. Literacy. Pretoria : HSRC, 1983.

59. JOUBERT, R.J.O. Enkele aspekte van Suid-Afrikaanse onderwysinvestering : 'n verdienstefunksiebenadering. Johannesburg: RAU, 1976. (Ongepubliseerde D.Com-proefskrif.)

60. LÖTTER, J.M. The South African population, its growth and expected trends. RSA 2000 3(2) 1981 : 1-19.

61. LÖTTER, J.M., VAN TONDER, J.L. Fertility and family planning among Blacks in South Africa (1974). Report no. S-39. Pretoria ;HSRC, 1976.

62. MALAN, T., HATTING, P.S. *Black homelands in South Africa.* Pretoria : Africa Institute of South Africa, 1976.

63. MALHERBE, E.G. *Education in South Africa 1923-1975.* Volume 2. Cape Town : Juta & Co., 1977.

64. MANNEKRAG: Opvoeding skep verwagtinge: Neem kennis van die 5,3 m Swartes op skool. *Tegniek, sakeblad vir Suider-Afrika* 35(10), Oktober 1983 : 41,46-48.

65. MARSHALL, A. *Principles of economics.* London : MacMillan & Co., 1910.

66. MEINTJIES MRS. Bureau for Economic Research : Co-operation and Development (BENSO). Telephonic interview in connection with vital statistics concerning the independent states by J.J. Bezuidenhout, researcher of the HSRC.

67. *Te* MIN DOGTERS *word in Suid-Afrika gebore om blanke vroue te vervang. Viva* 4(7), April 1983.

68. MOSTERT, W.P. Bevolkingstendense in die wêreld met besondere verwysing na Suid-Afrika. *Tydskrif vir Rasse Aangeleenthede.* Jaargang 24, no. 3, Julie 1973 : 85-88.

69. MOSTERT, W.P. *Vitale koerse onder Swartes.* S-N-227. Pretoria : Raad vir Geesteswetenskaplike Navorsing, 1981.

70. MOSTERT, W.P., VAN EEDEN, I.J., VAN TONDER, J.L. Bevolkingsprojeksies vir Suid-Afrika 1970-2010. No. 1-1973. Pretoria : Raad vir Geesteswetenskaplike Navorsing, 1973.

71. NATAL. Department of Education. Annual reports 1968-1979. Pietermaritzburg, 1968-1979.

72. NEL, B.W.M. Department of Education and Training. Telephonic interview in connection with examination statistics for 1981 of Ciskei Department of Education and for 1980 and 1981 of Venda Department of Education on 14 February 1984 by J.J. Bezuidenhout, researcher of the HSRC.

73. NELL, W.L. Kongres onderwerp : Enkele gedagtes rondom die RGN-onderwysverslag. Die Unie 79(3), September 1982 : 66-70.

74. OECD. Educational statistics yearbook Volume 2. Country tables. Paris, 1975.

75. ONDERWYS : IS ONS GEREED VIR UITDAGING? Tegniek, sakeblad vir Suider-Afrika 36(8), Augustus 1984 : 13-14.

76. ORANGE FREE STATE. Department of Education. Annual reports 1969-1979. Bloemfontein, 1969-1979.

77. RAAD VIR GEESTESWETENSKAPLIKE NAVORSING. Instituut vir Mannekragnavorsing. Groei in die bevolking en arbeidsmag van

die Bantoe en die implikasies van die groeineigings. Pretoria : RGN, 1974.

78. RAAD VIR GEESTESWETENSKAPLIKE NAVORSING. Verwikkeling rondom onderwysondersoek. Fokus op die RGN 2(2), Februarie 1982 : 1.

79. S.A. BEVOLKINGSGROEI. Aanwas bring probleme, maar ook uitdagings. Tegniek, sakeblad vir Suider-Afrika 36(1), Januarie 1984 :10-15.

80. SADIE, J.L. Education and population : mutal impacts : Demographic factors and the structure of education. Chapter 4 : 81-100. Helmut Msuham (ed.), Ordina Editions, 1975.

81. SADIE, J.L. Labour Force 2000. RSA 2000 3 (2), 1981 : 20-34.

82. SADIE, J.L. Projections of the South African population 1970-2020. Johannesburg, The Industrial Development Corporation, 1973.

83. SADIE, J.L. Socio-political requirements for stability and growth in South Africa. Journal for studies in economics and econometrics. Vol. 6, December 1976 : 66-67.

84. SADIE. J.L. The cost of population growth in South Africa. The South African Journal of Economics 40(2), June 1972 : 107-118.

85. SCHOEMAN, J.A. Departement van Onderwys en Opleiding. Afdeling Skakeldienste. Toespraak gelewer vir Afrikaanse Sakekamer. Pretoria, 14 Augustus 1980.

86. SCHULTZ, T.W. Investment in human capital. The American economic review. Vol. Ll, March 1961 : 1-17.

87. SMIT, P. Bevolkingstendense in the RSA : Enkele implikasies vir die onderwys. Aambeeld 9(4), November 1981 : 4-12.

88. SMIT, P. Die ontvolking van die Blanke platteland : Onlangse tendense. Pretoria : Universiteit van Pretoria, 1973.

89. SMIT, P., KOK, P.C. Bevolkingsherverspreiding in die RSA 1970-1980: Ontledings van die voorlopige 1980-sensusgegewens. Raad vir Geesteswetenskaplike Navorsing : Navorsingsverslag S-82. Pretoria : RGN, Oktober 1981.

90. SMIT, P., KOK, P.C. Bevolkingsverskuiwings. Werkdokument vir die Werkkomitee : Demografie, onderwys en mannekrag. RGN-ondersoek na die Onderwys. Pretoria : RGN, Januarie 1981.

91. SOUTH AFRICAN INSTITUTE OF RACE RELATIONS. Survey of race relations in South Africa 1975-1979. Pietermaritzburg : The Natal Witness, 1979.

92. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Bureau of Statistics. Population census, 6th September 1960. Volume 7, no. 1. Pretoria : Government Printer, February 1968.

93. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Central Statistical Services. Educational statistics 1981 and 1982, summary. Statistical news release P.23, 18 June 1982. Pretoria : Government Printer, 18 June 1982.

94. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Central Statistical Services. Population census 80 : Sample tabulation. Geographical distribution of the population. Report no. 02-80-01. Pretoria : Government Printer, June 1982.

95. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Central Statistical Services. South African statistics 1982. Population census 1980: Geographical distribution. Pretoria : Government Printer, 1982.

96. SOUTH AFRICA (Union). Department of Bantu Education. Bulletin : Statistics and other information about Bantu education for 1959. Pretoria : Government Printer, 1960.

97. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Bantu Education. Annual report 1976. Pretoria : Government Printer, 1977.

98. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Bantu Education. Annual report 1975. Pretoria : Government Printer, 1976.

99. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Bantu Education. *Annual report 1974.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1975.

100. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Bantu Education. *Annual report 1973.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1974.

101. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Bantu Education. *Annual report 1972.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1973.

102. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Bantu Education. *Annual report 1971.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1972.

103. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Bantu Education. *Annual report for the calendar year 1970.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1971.

104. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Bantu Education. *Annual report for the calendar year 1969.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1970.

105. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Bantu Education. *Annual report for the calendar year 1968.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1969.

106. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Bantu Education. *Annual report for the calendar year 1967.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1968.

107. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Bantu Education. *Annual report for the calendar year 1966.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1967.

108. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Bantu Education. *Annual report for the calendar year 1965.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1966.

109. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Bantu Education. *Annual report for the calendar year 1964.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1965.

110. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Bantu Education. *Annual report for the calendar year 1963.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1964.

111. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Bantu Education. *Annual report for the calendar year 1962.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1963.

112. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Bantu Education. *Annual report for the calendar year 1961.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1962.

113. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Bantu Education. *Bulletin: Statistics and other information about Bantu Education for*

1964. Appendix : Transkei. Pretoria : Government Printer, 1965.

114. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Bantu Education. *Bulletin: Statistics and other information about Bantu Education for 1961.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1962.

115. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Coloured Relations. *Annual reports 1968-1979.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1968-1979.

116. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Education and Training. *Annual report 1983.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1984.

117. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Education and Training. *Annual report 1982.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1983.

118. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Education and Training. *Annual report 1981.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1982.

119. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Education and Training. *Annual report 1980.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1981.

120. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Education and Training. *Annual report 1979.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1980.

121. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Education and Training. *Annual report 1978.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1979.

122. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Education and Training. *Annual report of the Department of Bantu Education 1977.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1978.

123. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Education and Training. *Confidential minutes of the special conference of inspectors, Medunsa, 17 Augustus 1979.* Introductory address by the Secretary of the Department of Education and Training, 1979. Pretoria : 1979

124. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Education and Training. *Information on trade training, technical training, advanced technical training, industrial training, February 1980.* Pretoria : Department of Education and Training, February 1980.

125. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Education and Training. *Information on trade training, technical training, advanced technical training, industrial training, February 1979.* Pretoria: Department of Education and Training, February 1979.

126. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Foreign Affairs and Information. *The promotion of industrial development: an element of co-ordinated regional development strategy for Southern Africa.*

Supplement to South African Digest. : Government Printer, 2 April 1982.

127. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Indian Affairs. *Annual reports 1968-1979.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1968-1979.

128. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Information. *South Africa 1978.* Official yearbook of the Republic of South Africa (fifth edition). Johannesburg : Perskor, 1978.

129. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Manpower Utilisation. *High level manpower in South Africa.* Report 1/80. Pretoria : Government Printer, 1980.

130. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of National Education. *Annual report 1983.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1984.

131. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of National Education. *Annual report for the calendar year 1982.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1983.

132. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of National Education. *Annual reports 1968-1979.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1968-1979.

133. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Departments of Labour and Mines. *Report of the commission of inquiry into labour legislation. Part I* (Wiehahn report). Pretoria : Government Printer, 1980.

134. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Statistics. *Draft classification of the purposes of government.* Pretoria : Government Printer, 1978.

135. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Statistics. *Educational statistics 1980 and 1981, summary.* Statistical news release P.23, 29 May 1981. Pretoria : Government Printer, 29 May 1981.

136. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Statistics. *Population projections for the RSA: 1970 to 2020.* Report no. 02-06-01. Pretoria : Government Printer, April 1976.

137. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Statistics. *South African statistics 1970.* Population: Race and sex at date of census (1904, 1911, 1921, 1936, 1946, 1951, 1960). Pretoria : Government Printer, February 1971.

138. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of Statistics. *South African statistics 1980.* Population: Population census 1970. Geographical distribution. Pretoria : Government Printer, 1980.

139. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Department of the Prime Minister. *Government Gazette 5887, 24 February 1978. Notice no. 300: Change*

in the designation of the Department of Bantu Education to Department of Education and Training. Pretoria : Government Printer, 1978.

140. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). *Education and Training Act, 1979 (Act 90 of 1979).* Vol. 168 (no. 6539), 29 June 1979. Section 3 : Determination of education policy. Pretoria : Government Printer, 1979.

141. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Government Gazette, Vol. 191, No. 7598, 29 May 1981. *The Education and Training Act, 1979 (Act 90 of 1979): Regulations regarding the admission of pupils to ... state schools, community schools and state-aided schools ...* R 1143, 29 May 1981 : 14-21. Pretoria : Government Printer, 1981.

142. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). Government Gazette 6095 of 30 June 1978. *Second Bantu Laws Amendment Act, 1979, Act No. 102, 1978, section 17.* Change of name or official title of certain institutions and holders of offices, and of "Bantu" and derivatives thereof. Pretoria : Government Printer, 1978.

143. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). *Interim memorandum on the report of the Human Sciences Research Council on the inquiry into the provision of education in the RSA.* Pretoria, 1981.

144. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). *Report of the commission of inquiry into legislation effecting the utilisation of manpower.* Chairman:

Dr. P.J. Riekert. (Excluding legislation administered by the Departments of Labour and Mines). Pretoria : Government Printer, 1978.

145. SOUTH AFRICA (Republic). *White paper on the provision of education in the Republic of South Africa* 1983. Pretoria: Government Printer, 1984.

146. SOUTH AFRICA (Union). Department of Native Affairs. *Bantu Education: Bulletin 1957.* Pretoria: Government Printer, 1958.

147. STATS. Geographical distribution of population according to race 1936-1980, 19(1), January 1983: 6.

148. STATS. Per capita costs of school pupils, 10(5), May 1974: 68.

149. STEENKAMP, C.J., VAN RENSBURG, F.A. *Vooruitskattings van die bevolking van onderwysinrigtings in Suid-Afrika.* Pretoria: RGN, 1972.

150. STIMIE, C.M. *Education in the Republic of South Africa.* Pretoria: HSRC, 1970.

151. STONE, H.J.S., *Gemeenskaplikheid en diversiteit. 'n Profiel van die vergelykende opvoedkunde.* Johannesburg: McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1981.

152. SUID-AFRIKA (Republiek). Departement van Bantoe-onderwys. *Begroting van uitgawes wat uit inkomsterekening bestry moet word. 1971-1977.* Pretoria: Staatsdrukker, 1971-1977.

153. SUID-AFRIKA (Republiek). Departement van Inligting. *Verklaring uitgereik op versoek van Sekretaris van Onderwys en Opleiding, 21 Maart 1978.* Pretoria, 21 Maart 1978.

154. SUID-AFRIKA (Republiek). Departement van Nasionale Opvoeding. *Suid-Afrikaanse statistiek van gewone en sekondêre skole se leerlinginskrywings vir die skooljare 1967 tot 1978.* Verslag: SANSO-202. Pretoria, November 1979.

155. SUID-AFRIKA (Republiek). Departement van Onderwys en Opleiding. *Begroting van uitgawes wat uit inkomsterekening bestry moet word. 1978-1980.* Pretoria: Staatsdrukker, 1978-1980.

156. SUID-AFRIKA (Republiek). Departement van Onderwys en Opleiding. *Inligting oor sekondêre tegniese onderwys, pre-tersiêre naskoolse tegniese onderwys, technikon onderwys, Januarie 1983.* Pretoria: Departement van Onderwys en Opleiding, Januarie 1983.

157. THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE. Department of Education. *Annual reports 1968-1979.* Cape Town, 1968-1979.

158. TRANSKEI (Republic). Department of Education. *Annual report 1983.* Umtata: Department of Education, 1984.

159. TRANSKEI (Republic). Department of Education. *Report for the period 1 January 1982 - 31 December 1982.* Umtata: Department of Education, 1984.

160. TRANSKEI (Republic). Department of Education. *Report for the period 1 January 1981 - 31 December 1981.* Umtata: Department of Education, 1982.

161. TRANSKEI (Republic). Department of Education. *Report for the period 1 January 1980 - 31 December 1980.* Umtata: Department of Education, 1981.

162. TRANSKEI (Republic). Department of Education. *Report for the period 1 January 1979 - 31 December 1974.* Umtata: Department of Education, 1980.

163. TRANSKEI (Republic). Department of Education. *Report for the period 1 January 1978 - 31 December 1978.* Umtata: Department of Education, 1979.

164. TRANSKEI (Republic). Department of Education. *Report for the period 1 January 1976 - 31 December 1978.* Umtata: Department of Education, 1978.

165. TRANSVAAL. Department of Education. *Annual reports 1968-1979.* Pretoria, 1968 - 1979.

166. UNESCO. *International standard classification of education.* Paris, March 1976.

167. UNIVERSITEIT VAN STELLENBOSCH. Eenheid vir toekomsnavorsing. *Voorlopige resultate van die 1980-sensus. Stellenbosch, 1980.*

168. VAALDRIEHOEK SA se hartslag. *Tegniek, sakeblad vir Suider- Afrika* 35(3), 3 Maart 1983: 34.

169. VAN DER STOEP, F. Onderwysprobleme in die RSA. Dosent van Universiteit van Pretoria. *Bulletin oor hoër onderwys* 3(1), Januarie 1982: 50-58.

170. VAN DER STOEP, F. Wat is wesenlik van die RGN-ondersoek na die Onderwys. *Tydskrif vir geesteswetenskappe.* Akademie vir Wetenskap en Kuns. 22(1), Maart 1982: 15-30.

171. VAN DYK, D.F. Contact between the early tribal African education and the Westernized system of mission education. *Educare* 3(1), 1974: 1-14.

172. VAN LOGGERENBERG, N.T. Beginsels vir onderwysvoorsiening in die RSA: Teorie en praktyk. *Die Vrystaatse Onderwyser.* Deel 74, no. 7, Julie 1984: 1-8.

173. VAN NIEKERK, C. *Enkele opmerkings oor faktore en probleme wat die berekening in vergelyking van eenheidskostes van die onderwys*

beïnvloed. Werkdokument vir die Werkkomitee: Demografie, onderwys en mannekrag, RGN-ondersoek na die Onderwys. Pretoria: RGN, 1980.

174. VAN NIEKERK, C. *'n Analise van tersaaklike statistiek by onderwysbeplanning en -finansiering met spesiale verwysing na Swart onderwys in the die Suid-Afrikaanse konteks.* Proefskrif vir die graad Doctor Educationis. Bloemfontein: UOVS, Desember 1983.

175. VAN NIEKERK, C., BEZUIDENHOUT, D.J. *Opgawe van leerlingtalle en personeel vir alle bevolkingsgroepe van die RSA met projeksies.* Werkdokument vir die Werkkomitee: Demografie, onderwys en mannekrag, RGN-ondersoek na die Onderwys. Pretoria: RGN, 1980.

176. VAN NIEKERK, C., BEZUIDENHOUT, D.J., HAMMAN, P.J.T. *Onderwys vir sintuiglik-, neuraal- en verstandelik-gestremde en pedagogies-waarloosde en gedragsafwykende leerlinge.* Werkdokument vir die Werkkomitee: Demografie, onderwys en mannekrag, RGN-ondersoek na die Onderwys. Pretoria: RGN, 1981.

177. VAN NIEKERK, C., BEZUIDENHOUT, D.J., HAMMAN, P.J.T. *Statistiek ten opsogte van naskoolse en tersiêre opleiding.* Werkdokument vir die Werkkomitee: Demografie, onderwys en mannekrag, RGN-ondersoek na die Onderwys. Pretoria: RGN, 1981.

178. VAN RENSBURG, F.A.J. *Trends in Bantu education in the Republic of South Africa.* Pretoria: HSRC, 1975.

179. VAN TONDER, J.L. , MOSTERT, W.P. *Bevolkingsprojeksies in Suidelike Afrika vir die tydperk 1970-2020.* Verslag no. S.73. Pretoria: RGN, 1980.

180. VENDA (Republic). Department of Education. *Annual report 1983.* Sibasa: Department of Education, 1984.

181. VENDA (Republic). Department of Education. *Annual report 1982.* Sibasa: Department of Education, 1983.

182. VENDA (Republic). Department of Education. *Annual report 1981.* Sibasa: Department of Education, 1982.

183. VENDA (Republic). Department of Education. *Annual report 1980.* Sibasa: Department of Education, 1981.

184. VENDA (Republic). Department of Education. *Report for the period 1 January 1979 to 31 December 1979.* Sibasa: Department of Education, 1980.

185. VENDA (Republic). Department of Education. *Report for the period 1 January 1978 to 31 December 1978.* Sibasa: Department of Education, 1979.

186. VENTER, H.C.A. *A resume of educational development in the RSA until 1978 and some observations in this respect.* Paper read at a HSRC simposium. Pretoria, 1979.

187. VENTER, R.H. Onderwys en finansies. *Natalse Onderwysblad* 12(2), November 1981: 44-50.

188. VERWEY, C.T. *The incidence or pupil repetition in Ciskei primary schools with special reference to the qualifications of teachers 1978.* Bloemfontein: UOFS, Research Unit for Education System Planning, 1979.

INDEX PAGE

Age distribution of population:

- According to sex, with percentages:
  - Asians (1970, 1980) 122;128-129
  - Blacks (1970, 1980) 123-126;129-132
  - Coloureds (1970, 1980) 121;128
  - Whites (1970, 1980) 120;127
- Black population of Southern Africa according to areas (1960, 1970, 1980) 70;73-74;76-77
- Southern Africa according to population groups (1960, 1970, 1980) 68-78
- White area of RSA according to population groups (1960, 1970, 1980) 75-78

Asian population/Asians of Southern Africa:

- Age distribution according to sex and percentages (1970, 1980) 122;128-129
- Cumulative percentage age distribution (1960, 1970, 1980) 132-136
- Economically active section (1960, 1970, 1980) 95-98
- Fertility and mortality figures (1960, 1970, 1980) 99-118
- Growth, population (1960, 1970, 1980) 67-118
- Growth rate, compound annual (1904 to 1980) 9
- Percentage increase, mean annual (1904 to 1980) 9
- Population, geographic distribution (1970 to 1980) 10-26
- Potential school population according to age intervals (1960, 1970, 1980) 93;88-95
- Shifts 56-57
- Vital statistics (1960, 1970, 1980) 99-118

Birth and growth rate of population 99-118

Black population:

- Blacks:
  - Foreign 34
  - Resettlement 45;48;52;57
  - Urban 40;47;48

INDEX PAGE

* Fertility and mortality figures (1960, 1970, 1980) 99-118

* Independent states 1;6;7

* National states: Age distribution according to sex and percentages (1970, 1980) 123-126;131-132

* Self-governing national states 1;6;16-35

* Southern Africa:

  -Age distribution according to areas (1960, 1970, 1980) 68;72-74;78-83
  -Age distribution according to sex and percentages (1970, 1980) 119;123-126;129-132
  -Constitutional development 29-33
  -Constitutional development, including education 29-33
  -Cumulative percentage age distribution (1960, 1970, 1980) 132-136
  -Economically active part (1960, 1970, 1980) 95-98
  -Growth/Increase (population) (1960, 1970, 1980) 67-118
  -Growth rate, compound annual (1904 to 1980) 9
  -Percentage increase, mean annual (1904 to 1980) 9
  -Population, geographic distribution (1970 to 1980) 10-35
  -Potential school population according to age intervals (1960, 1970, 1980) 94;88-95
  -Shifts (population) 43-58

* Vital statistics 99-118

* White area:

  -Age distribution according to sex with percentages (1970, 1980) 123-126;130-131
  -Geographic distribution (1970, 1980) 10-35
  -Potential school population according to age intervals (1960, 1970, 1980) 88-95

Bophuthatswana, Republic of:

* Population (1980) 7;18;23

Census surveys (1904 to 1980):

* Entire population:

  -South Africa 6-8
  -Southern Africa 6-8

Coloured population of Southern Africa:

* Age distribution according to sex and percentages (1970, 1980) 121;128

* Cumulative percentage age distribution (1960, 1970,

1980) 132-136

* Economically active part (1960, 1970, 1980) 95-98
* Fertility and mortality figures (1960, 1970, 1980) 99-118
* Growth/Increase (1960, 1970, 1980) 67-118
* Growth rate, compound annual (1904 to 1980) 9
* Percentage increase, mean annual (1904 to 1980) 9
* Potential school population with age intervals (1960, 1970, 1980) 92;88-95
* Shifts (population) 56-57
* Vital statistics (1960, 1970, 1980) 99-118

Economically active labour market/section/part/group of population (1960, 1970, 1980):

* Asians 95-98
* Blacks 95-98
* Coloureds 95-98
* Total population 95-98
* Whites 95-98

Economy of population, positive active 67-68

Fertility and mortality (1960, 1970, 1980) (also see fertility and mortality figures) 99-118

Fertility and mortality figures (1960, 1970, 1980) (also see fertility and mortality):

* Asians 99-118
* Blacks 99-118
* Coloureds 99-118
* Whites 99-118

Foreign Blacks 34

Growth rate, compound annual:

* Population groups of Southern Africa (1904 to 1980) 9

HSRC Education Report 1981:

* Disparity with regard to provision of education in the RSA 1-2

* Reaction of Government of RSA to report 2

HSRC Investigation into Education 1981:

* Disparity with regard to provision of education in the RSA 1-2

* Reaction of Government of RSA to report 2

Immigration 43

Increase in numbers of children younger than one year per population group (1960, 1970, 1980):

* Southern Africa 78-88

* White area of RSA 78-88

Independent states:

* 1980 1;6

* 1981 and after that 6

* Land consolidation 45-52

* Population (1980) 7;23

* Potential school population according to age intervals (1960, 1970, 1980) 88-95

Influx control measures 47

Internal/Interior migration:

* Factors that constitute the basis of internal migration 44-58

* Influence of regional development plan 63-64

* Significance of economic development 58-59

* Statistics for 1970 to 1980 48-58

Job reservation, phasing out of 47

Land consolidation:

* Independent and self-governing national states 45;52;54

Internal/Interior migration::

* Factors that constitute the basis of internal migration 45-48

* Influence of regional development plan 60-65

* Significance of economic development 59

* Statistics for 1970 to 1980 48-58

Percentage increase, mean annual:

* Population groups of Southern Africa (1904 to 1980) 9

Percentage increases and decreases of children younger than one year of total population and of various population groups:

* Southern Africa (1960, 1970, 1980) 78-88

* White area of RSA (1960, 1970, 1980) 78-88

Phasing out of job reservation 47

Population groups of Southern Africa:

* Age distribution:

-Southern Africa 68-78
-White area 76-83

* Geographic distribution:

-Factors that constitute the phenomenon and ways in which they could affect Asians, Blacks, Coloureds and Whites 35-42

* Growth rate, compound annual (1904 to 1980) 9

* Percentage increase, mean annual (1904 to 1980) 9

Population growth:

* Asians (1960, 1970, 1980) 67-118

* Blacks (1960, 1970, 1980) 67-118

* Coloureds (1960, 1970, 1980) 67-118

* Different population groups (1960, 1970, 1980):

-Southern Africa 68-78
-White area 75-78

* Self-governing national states in percentages (1970, 1980) 26;27;74

INDEX PAGE

* Total population (1960, 1970, 1980):
  - -Southern Africa 65-78
  - -White area 75-78

* Whites (1960, 1970, 1980) 67-118

Population of independent states (TBVC countries) according to population groups (1980):

* Bophuthatswana, Republic of 7;18;23

* Transkei, Republic of 7;18;23

* Venda, Republic of 7;18;23

Population of Republic of Bophuthatswana 7;18;23

Population of Republic of South Africa/RSA:

* Blacks:
  - -Age distribution according to sex and percentages (1970, 1980) 119;123-126; 129-132
  - -Ethnic groups and areas (1970, 1980) 13-35
  - -Geographic distribution (1970, 1980) 16-35
  - -Potential school population according to age intervals (1960, 1970, 1980) 88-95
  - -Self-governing national states 16-35

* Ethnic groups and areas (1970, 1980) 10-13

* Population groups (percentual increases and decreases) and areas (1970, 1980) 16-35

* Population growth/increase in percentages:
  - -Asians (1960, 1970, 1980) 67-118
  - -Blacks (1960, 1970, 1980) 67-118
  - -Coloureds (1960, 1970, 1980) 67-118
  - -Self-governing national states (1970, 1980) 26-28;73
  - -Whites (1960, 1970, 1980) 67-118

* White area of RSA:
  - -Age distribution of population according to population groups (1960, 1970, 1980) 71;72;75-78
  - -Increase in numbers of children under the age of one per population group (1960, 1970, 1980) 78-88
  - -Percentage increase and decrease of children under the age of one of overall population and of various population groups (1960, 1970, 1980) 78-88

* White population:

-Economically active part (1960, 1970, 1980) 95-98

* Whites, economically active section (1960, 1970, 1980) 95-98

Population of Southern Africa:

* Age distribution according to sex and percentages:

  -Asians (1970, 1980) 122;128-129
  -Blacks (1970, 1980): National states 123-126;131-132
  White area 123-126;130-131
  -Coloureds (1970, 1980) 121-128
  -Whites (1970, 1980) 120;127

* Cumulative percentage age distribution:

  -Asians (1960, 1970, 1980) 132-136
  -Blacks (1960, 1970, 1980) 132-136
  -Coloureds (1960, 1970, 1980) 132-136
  -Whites (1960, 1970, 1980) 132-136

* Economically active part (1960, 1970, 1980) 95-98

* Geographic distribution:

  -Black population in ethnic groups and in areas: Provinces, self-governing states, independent states (1970, 1980) 16-35
  -Population groups in areas: Provinces, national states (1936 to 1980) 16-35
  -Population groups in areas: Provinces, self-governing states, independent states (1970, 1980) 16-35
  -Population groups in areas with percentual composition: Provinces, self-governing states, independent states (1970, 1980) 16-35
  -Population groups in areas with percentual increases and decreases: Provinces, self-governing states, independent states (1970, 1980) 16-35
  -Population groups in percentages (1936 to 1980) 16-35
  -Total population in ethnic groups and in areas: RSA and national states 16-35

* Percentage increases and decreases of children younger than one year per population group (1960, 1970, 1980) 78-88

* Population groups: Census surveys and percentage composition (1904 to 1980) 6;7;8

* Potential school population according to ages (1960, 1970, 1980) 88-95

* White population:

-Growth/Increase (1960, 1970, 1980) 67-118

-Growth rate, compound annual (1904 to 1980) 9
-Percentage increase, mean annual (1904 to 1980) 9
-Potential school population in age intervals (1960, 1970, 1980) 88-91
-Shifts (population) 55-56

Population projections:

* By authorities like HSRC (1973, 1980, 1981), Sadie (1973) and Central Statistical Services (1976, 1982) 137;142

* Comment on totals : Total population and various population groups 142-145;178-185

* Comparison of respective projections and with respect to 1980 census figures:

-Asians 143-146
-Blacks 143-146
-Coloureds 143-146
-Whites 143-146

* Reasons why projections show deviations 145-148

* Variable factors that hamper the calculation of projections 138-142

* Various population groups of Southern Africa (1980 to 2000) 149

* Various population groups of Southern Africa according to age distribution and sex (1980 to 2000):

-Asians 149;166-171
-Blacks 149;172-177
-Coloureds 149;160-165
-Whites 149-159

Population shifts/distribution/redistribution:

* Asian population 50-54;56-57

* Black population 50-54;57-58

* Coloured population 50-54;56

* Gains and losses in shifts of total population 43-58

* Increases and decreases in numbers of various population groups based on magisterial districts (1970, 1980) 43-58

* In self-governing national states (1970, 1980) 45-48
* Pattern 48-54
* Perloff Shift Technique 49
* White population 50-54;55-56

Population of Republic of Transkei (1980) 7;18;23

Population of Republic of Venda (1980) 7;18;23

Positive active economy of population 67-68

Potential school population according to age intervals:

* Asians 93;88-95
* Blacks: White area, self-governing states, independent states 94;88-95
* Coloureds 92;88-95
* Total population 89;88-95
* Whites 90;88-95

Regional development strategy for Southern Africa:

* Criteria for classification of regions according to development priorities 62
* Demarcation of development regions 60-62
* Latest information 59-64
* Order of importance of development regions 63

Republic of Bophuthatswana:

* Population (1980) 7;18;23

Republic of South Africa:

* Blacks:
  -Age distribution according to sex and percentages (1970, 1980) 119;123-126; 129-132
  -Geographic distribution (1970, 1980) 16-35
  -Potential school population according to age intervals (1960, 1970, 1980) 88-95
  -Self-governing national states 16-35

* Population growth/increase in percentages:

-Asians (1960, 1970, 1980) 67-118
-Blacks (1960, 1970, 1980) 67-118
-Coloureds (1960, 1970, 1980) 67-118
-Self-governing national states (1960, 1970, 1980) 26-28;73
-Whites (1960, 1970, 1980) 67-118

* White area of RSA:

-Age distribution of population according to population groups (1960, 1970, 1980) 71;72;75-78
-Increase in numbers of children under the age of one per population group (1960, 1970, 1980) 78-88
-Percentage increase and decrease of children younger than one year of total population and of various population groups (1960, 1970, 1980) 78-88

* White population:

-Economical active part (1960, 1970, 1980) 95-98

Republic of Transkei:

* Population (1980) 7;18;23

Republic of Venda:

* Population (1980) 7;18;23

Research project: Comparative education statistics:

* Aim 1-2

* Initiation 1-2

Resettlement schemes for Blacks 45;48;52;57

Self-governing national states:

* Land consolidation 45;52;54

* Population growth in percentages (1970, 1980) 6;26;27;74

* Potential school population according to age intervals (1960, 1970, 1980) 88-95

South Africa:

* Total population : Census surveys (1904 to 1980) 6-10

Southern Africa:

* Definition of concept, 1980 1;6

* Definition of concept, 1981 1;6

- Regional development strategy 59-64
- Total population: Census surveys (1904 to 1980) 6-10

TBVC countries:

- 1980 1;6
- 1981 and after that 6
- Land consolidation 45;52
- Population (1980) 7;18;23
- Potential school population according to age intervals (1960, 1970, 1980) 88-95

Transkei, Republic of:

- Population (1980) 7;18;23

Urban Blacks 40;47;48

Vaal Triangle as strategic industrial centre 65-66

Venda, Republic of:

- Population (1980) 7;18;23

Vital statistics (1960, 1970, 1980):

- Asians 98-118
- Blacks 98-118
- Coloureds 98-118
- Whites 98-118

White area of Republic of South Africa

- Blacks : Potential school population according to age intervals (1960, 1970, 1980) 88-95

White population of Republic of South Africa:

- Age distribution according to sex and percentages (1970, 1980) 120;127
- Cumulative percentage age distribution (1960, 1970, 1980) 132-136

White population of Southern Africa:

- Growth/Increase (1960, 1970, 1980) 67-118

- * Growth rate, compound annual (1904 to 1980) 9
- * Percentage increase, mean annual (1904 to 1980) 9
- * Potential school population in age intervals (1960, 1970, 1980) 88-91
- * Shifts (population) 55-56

Whites

- * Fertility and mortality figures (1960, 1970, 1980) 98-118
- * Vital statistics (1960, 1970, 1980) 98-118

HSRC PUBLICATION LIST

A complete list of HSRC publications or a list of publications of a particular Institute of the HSRC is available from the Head: Technical Services

HUMAN SCIENCES RESEARCH COUNCIL
RAAD VIR GEESTESWETENSKAPLIKE NAVORSING

President	Dr J.G. Garbers	President
Deputy Presidents	Dr H.C. Marais, Dr J.D. Venter	Adjunk-presidente
Vice-Presidents	Dr K.F. Mauer, Prof. D.J. Stoker	Vise-presidente
Executive Director: Administration	J.G.G. Gräbe	Uitvoerende Direkteur: Administrasie
Chief PRO	Dr M.J. Bekker	Skakelhoof

Functions of the HSRC

The HSRC undertakes, promotes, supports and co-ordinates research in the field of the human sciences. It also determines research priorities, disseminates the findings of human sciences research, facilitates and evaluates the implementation of research findings, stimulates the training of researchers, places the full spectrum of human sciences disciplines at the service of the inhabitants of the RSA and promotes science in general.

Institutes

Institute for Communication Research (ICOMM)

Institute for Educational Research (IER)

Institute for Historical Research (IHR)

Institute for Manpower Research (IMAN)

National Institute for Personnel Research (NIPR)

Institute for Psychological and Edumetric Research (IPER)

Institute for Research Development (IRD)

Institute for Research into Language and the Arts (IRLA)

Institute for Sociological and Demographic Research (ISODEM)

Institute for Statistical Research (ISR)

Bureau for Research Support Services (BRSS)

Administration

Head office

Private Bag X41, Pretoria 0001
Republic of South Africa
Telegrams RAGEN
Tel. (012) 28-3944
Telex 3-20893 SA

NIPR

P.O. Box 32410, Braamfontein 2017
Republic of South Africa
Telegrams NAVORSPERS
Tel. (011) 339-4451
Telex 4-25459 SA

Regional offices

Western Cape, Private Bag X40, Parow 7500
Tel. (021) 930-2566 Telex 5-22260 SA

Natal, P.O. Box 508, Durban 4000
Tel. (031) 31-6926 Telex 6-28567 SA

NIPR Natal, P.O. Box 17001, Congella 4013
Tel. (031) 815851 Telex 6-22431 SA

NIPR Eastern Cape, P.O. Box 1124, Port Elizabeth 6000
Tel. (041) 53-2131 Telex 2-43203 SA

Funksies van die RGN

Die RGN onderneem, bevorder, ondersteun en koördineer navorsing op die gebied van die geesteswetenskappe, bepaal navorsingsprioriteite, versprei die resultate van geesteswetenskaplike navorsing, vergemaklik en evalueer die implementering van die resultate van navorsing, stimuleer die opleiding van navorsers, stel die volle spektrum van dissiplines in die geesteswetenskappe ten diens van die inwoners van die RSA en bevorder die wetenskap in die breë.

Institute

Instituut vir Geskiedenisnavorsing (IGN)

Instituut vir Kommunikasienavorsing (IKOMM)

Instituut vir Mannekragnavorsing (IMAN)

Instituut vir Navorsingsontwikkeling (INO)

Instituut vir Opvoedkundige Navorsing (ION)

Nasionale Instituut vir Personeelnavorsing (NIPN)

Instituut vir Psigologiese en Edumetriese Navorsing (IPEN)

Instituut vir Sosiologiese en Demografiese Navorsing (ISODEM)

Instituut vir Statistiese Navorsing (ISN)

Instituut vir Taal- en Kunstenavorsing (INTAK)

Buro vir Ondersteunende Navorsingsdienste (BOND)

Administrasie

Hoofkantoor

Privaatsak X41, Pretoria 0001
Republiek van Suid-Afrika
Telegramme RAGEN
Tel. (012) 28-3944
Teleks 3-20893 SA

NIPN

Posbus 32410, Braamfontein 2017
Republiek van Suid-Afrika
Telegramme NAVORSPERS
Tel. (011) 339-4451
Teleks 4-25459 SA

Streekkantore

Wes-Kaap, Privaatsak X40, Parow 7500
Tel. (021) 930-2566 Teleks 5-22260 SA

Natal, Posbus 508, Durban 4000
Tel. (031) 31-6926 Teleks 6-28567 SA

NIPN Natal, Posbus 17001, Congella 4013
Tel. (031) 815851 Teleks 6-22431 SA

NIPN Oos-Kaap, Posbus 1124, Port Elizabeth 6000
Tel. (041) 53-2131 Teleks 2-43203 SA